

New Headway Plus

Pre-Intermediate
Student's Book

John and Liz Soars

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CONTENTS

LANGUAGE INPUT

Unit	Grammar	Vocabulary	Everyday English
1 Getting to know you p6	Tenses Present, past, future p6–8 Questions <i>Where were you born?</i> p6–8 <i>What do you do?</i> Questions words <i>Who ... ?</i> , <i>Why ... ?</i> , <i>How much ... ?</i> p7	Using a bilingual dictionary p9 Parts of speech adjective, preposition p9 Words with more than one meaning <i>a book to read</i> <i>I booked a table.</i> p9	Social expressions 1 <i>Have a good weekend!</i> <i>Same to you.</i> p13
2 The way we live p14	Present tenses Present Simple <i>Most people live in the south.</i> p14 Present Continuous <i>What's he doing at the moment?</i> p16 <i>have/have got</i> <i>We have a population of ...</i> p15 <i>Have you got a mobile phone?</i> p16	Describing countries <i>a beautiful country</i> <i>the coast</i> <i>This country exports wool.</i> p14 Collocation Daily life <i>listen to music</i> <i>talk to my friends</i> p17	Making conversation Asking questions Showing that you're interested p21
3 It all went wrong p22	Past tenses Past Simple <i>He heard a noise.</i> <i>What did you do last night?</i> p23 Past Continuous <i>Where was he working?</i> p24 <i>He was working as a lorry driver.</i> p24	Irregular verbs <i>saw, went, told</i> p23 Making connections <i>break/mend, lose/find</i> p23 Nouns, verbs, and adjectives Suffixes to make different parts of speech <i>discuss, discussion</i> p28 Making negatives <i>pack, unpack</i> p28	Time expressions <i>the eighth of January</i> <i>at, on, in</i> <i>at six o'clock</i> <i>on Saturday</i> <i>in 1995</i> p29
4 Let's go shopping! p30	Quantity <i>much and many</i> <i>How much butter? How many eggs?</i> p30 <i>some and any</i> <i>some apples, any grapes</i> p31 <i>something, anyone, nobody, everywhere</i> p32 <i>a few, a little, a lot of</i> p31 Articles <i>a shopkeeper, an old city, the centre of Iran</i> <i>He sells candy.</i> p33	Buying things <i>milk, eggs, bread, a packet of crisps,</i> <i>a can of cola, shampoo, soap,</i> <i>sweaters, newsagent, phone card,</i> <i>a tie, conditioner</i>	Prices and shopping £1.99 \$160 <i>What's the exchange rate?</i> <i>How much is a pair of jeans?</i> p37
Stop and check 1 Teacher's Book p130			
5 What do you want to do? p38	Verb patterns 1 <i>want/hope to do, enjoy/like doing</i> <i>looking forward to doing, 'd like to do</i> p38 Future intentions <i>going to and will</i> <i>They're going to see a football match.</i> <i>I'll pick it up for you.</i> p40	Hot verbs <i>have, go, come</i> <i>have an accident</i> <i>go wrong</i> <i>come first</i> p44	How do you feel? <i>nervous, fed up</i> <i>Cheer up!</i> p45
6 Tell me! What's it like? p46	What's it like? <i>What's Paris like?</i> p46 Comparative and superlative adjectives <i>big, bigger, biggest</i> <i>good, better, best</i> p48	Talking about cities <i>modern buildings, night-life</i> p47 Money <i>make money, inherit</i> p50 Synonyms and antonyms <i>lovely, beautiful, interested, bored</i> p52	Directions <i>farm, wood, pond</i> <i>opposite the car park</i> <i>over the bridge</i> p53
7 Fame p54	Present Perfect and Past Simple <i>She has written 20 novels.</i> <i>He wrote 47 novels.</i> p54 for and since <i>for three years</i> <i>since 1985</i> p56 Tense revision <i>Where do you live?</i> <i>How long have you lived there?</i> <i>Why did you move?</i> p56	Past participles <i>lived, written</i> p54 Bands and music <i>guitar, keyboards</i> <i>make a record</i> p57 Adverbs <i>slowly, carefully, just, still, too</i> p60 Word pairs <i>this and that</i> <i>ladies and gentlemen</i> p60	Short answers <i>Do you like cooking?</i> <i>Yes, I do.</i> <i>No, I don't.</i> p61

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

Reading	Speaking	Listening	Writing (in the Workbook)
'People, the great communicators' – the many ways we communicate p11	Information gap – Joy Darling p8 Discussion – who are your ideal neighbours? p12 Roleplay – exchanging information about two neighbours p12	Neighbours – Steve and Mrs Snell talk about each other as neighbours (jigsaw) p12	Informal letters A letter to a penfriend WB p9
'Living in the USA' – three people talk about their experiences (jigsaw) p18	Information gap – people's lifestyles p16 Exchanging information about immigrants to the USA p18	'You drive me mad (but I love you)!' – what annoys you about the people in your life? p20	Linking words <i>but, however</i> WB p14 Describing a person WB p15
'The burglars' friend' p22 'The thief, his mother, and \$2 billion' p24 'Teenager goes on spending spree' (jigsaw) p25 Sherlock Holmes – <i>The Three Students</i> p26	Telling stories <i>fortunately/unfortunately</i> p25	An extract from <i>The Three Students</i> p26	Linking words <i>while, during, and for</i> WB p20 Writing a story 1 WB p21
Markets around the world – Bangkok, Provence, and Marrakech p34	Survey – the good things and bad things about living in your city p32 Discussion – going to a market p34	'My uncle's a shopkeeper' p33 Buying things – conversations in shops p36	Filling in forms WB p26
'Hollywood kids – growing up in Los Angeles isn't easy' p42	What are your plans and ambitions? p39 Being a teenager p42	A song – <i>You've got a friend</i> p44	Writing a postcard WB p32
'A tale of two millionaires' – one was mean and one was generous p50	Information gap – comparing cities p48 Discussion – the rich and their money p50	Living in another country – an interview with a girl who went to live in Sweden p49	Relative clauses 1 <i>who/that/which/where</i> WB p37 Describing a place WB p37
Celebrity interview from <i>Hi! Magazine</i> with a pop star and a footballer p58	Mingle – Find someone who ... p55 Roleplay – interviewing a band p57 Project – find an interview with a famous person p58	An interview with the band <i>Style</i> p57	Relative clauses 2 <i>who/which/that</i> as the object WB p41 Writing a biography WB p42

LANGUAGE INPUT

Unit	Grammar	Vocabulary	Everyday English
8 Do's and don'ts p62	have (got) to <i>You have to pay bills. I've got to go. p62</i> should <i>You should talk to your boss. You shouldn't drink coffee at night. p64</i> must <i>You must go to the dentist. p64</i>	Jobs <i>receptionist, nurse, chef p63</i> Travelling abroad <i>visa, documents p64</i> Words that go together Verb + complement <i>take responsibility, live abroad p68</i> Compound nouns <i>post office, headache p68</i>	At the doctor's <i>a cold, the 'flu food poisoning a temperature a prescription p69</i>
Stop and check 2 Teacher's Book p132			
9 Going places p70	Time and conditional clauses <i>as soon as, when, while, until When we're in Australia, we'll ... p70</i> What if ... ? <i>If I pass my exams, I'll ... p71</i>	Hot verbs <i>take, get, do, make take a photo, get angry, do me a favour make up your mind p76</i> Hotels <i>a double room, ground floor p76</i>	In a hotel <i>I'd like to make a reservation. Can I have a credit card number? p77</i>
10 Scared to death p78	verb patterns 2 <i>manage to do, used to do, go walking p78</i> Infinitives Purpose <i>I went to the shops to buy some shoes. p80</i> <i>what, etc. + infinitive I don't know what to say. p80</i> <i>something, etc. + infinitive I need something to eat. p80</i>	Shops <i>post office, hairdresser's p80</i> Describing feelings and situations <i>frightening, frightened worrying, worried p81</i>	Exclamations <i>He was so scared! He's such an idiot! I've spent so much money! p85</i>
11 Things that changed the world p86	Passives <i>X-rays were discovered by Wilhelm Roentgen. The first X-ray was taken in 1896. p86-9</i>	Verbs and past participles <i>discovered, found p87</i> Verbs and nouns that go together <i>tell a story, keep a promise p89</i>	Notices <i>Keep off the grass Out of order p93</i>
12 Dreams and reality p94	Second conditional <i>If I were a princess, I'd live in a castle. p94</i> might <i>I might go to America. p96-97</i>	Phrasal verbs <i>go away, take off your coat The plane took off. I gave up my job. Take them off. p100</i>	Social expressions 2 <i>Congratulations! Never mind. I haven't a clue. p101</i>
Stop and check 3 Teacher's Book p134			
13 Earning a living p102	Present Perfect Continuous <i>I've been living on the streets for a year. How long have you been selling The Big Issue? p102</i> Present Perfect Simple versus Continuous <i>He's been running. He's run five miles. p104</i>	Jobs and the alphabet game – <i>architect, bookseller ... p106</i> Word formation <i>death, die variety, various p105</i> Adverbs <i>mainly, possibly, exactly, carefully p105</i>	Telephoning <i>Is that Ewan? I'm afraid he's out. Can I take a message? p109</i>
14 Family ties p110	Past Perfect for clarification: <i>They hadn't seen each other for forty years. p110</i> Reported statements <i>He told me that he liked him. He said that he'd met him at university. p112</i>	Hot verbs p113 <i>bring, take, go, come He's coming to see me. He's bringing his children. I went to the USA. I took my nephews.</i>	Saying goodbye <i>Have a safe journey! Thank you for a lovely evening. p117</i>
Stop and check 4 Teacher's Book p136			

Tapescripts p118

Grammar Reference p129

Word list Teacher's Book p152

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

Reading	Speaking	Listening	Writing (in the Workbook)
Problem page – three problems, six suggestions p66	Jobs – a game p63 Discussion – house rules p63 Asking questions about places p65 Roleplay – acting a dialogue p67 Group work – a letter to a problem page p67	Holidays in January – three people's advice on what to do in their country in January p65 At the doctor's p69	Writing letters Formal letters WB p47
The world's first megalopolis – a city of 40 million people p75	What will you do? p72 Discussion – what will life be like in the 21st century? p73 What are the biggest cities in the world? p74	Life in 2050 – an interview with Michio Kaku, Professor of Theoretical Physics p73	Linking words 2 Advantages and disadvantages WB p52
'Don't look down' – walking on a dangerous footpath p78 'Into the wild' – an American boy's search for freedom p82	'When I was young' – talking about your childhood p80 Describing feelings p81 Roleplay – interviews with survivors of the <i>Titanic</i> p85	When I was young p80 The sinking of the <i>Titanic</i> p84	Writing letters Formal and informal letters 1 WB p57
A discovery and an invention that changed the world (jigsaw) p90	Exchanging and discussing information about DNA and Google p90	The world's most common habit: chewing gum – the history of chewing gum p92	Writing a review of a book or film WB p63
Supervolcano p98	Giving advice – <i>If I were you, I'd ...</i> p96 Discussion – Surviving a disaster p98	Two students talk about their future plans p96	Adverbs WB p68 Writing a story 2 WB p68
A funny way to earn a living – a rollerskater in a supermarket, a beachcomber, and a hot air balloonist (jigsaw) p106–7	Information gap – Steven Spielberg p104 Discussion – What is a good job? p106 Roleplay – phoning a friend p108	Giving news – a telephone conversation between Craig and his mother p108	Writing letters Expressions in different kinds of letters WB p74 Formal and informal letters 2 WB p75
Twins reunite after forty years p110 A short story – 'The tale of two silent brothers' p114	Telling stories p111 Arguments in families p114 What happens next in the story? p115 Families that live abroad p116	An interview with Beth Taylor p112 Families that live abroad – p116	Writing a story 3 WB p80

Appendix 1 – Irregular verbs p143

Appendix 2 – verb patterns p143

Phonetic symbols – inside front cover



1

Getting to know you

Tenses • Questions • Using a bilingual dictionary • Social expressions 1

STARTER



1 Match the questions and answers.

Where were you born?	A year ago.
What do you do?	Three times a week.
Are you married?	In Morocco.
Why are you learning English?	Because I need it for my job.
When did you start learning English?	I'm a teacher.
How often do you have English classes?	No, I'm single.

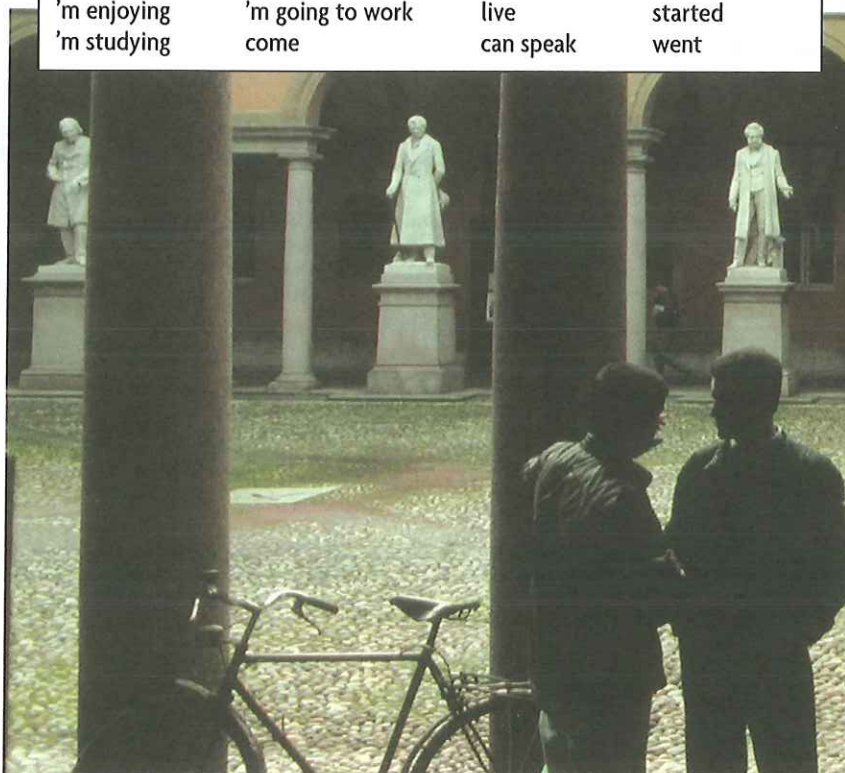
2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

TWO STUDENTS

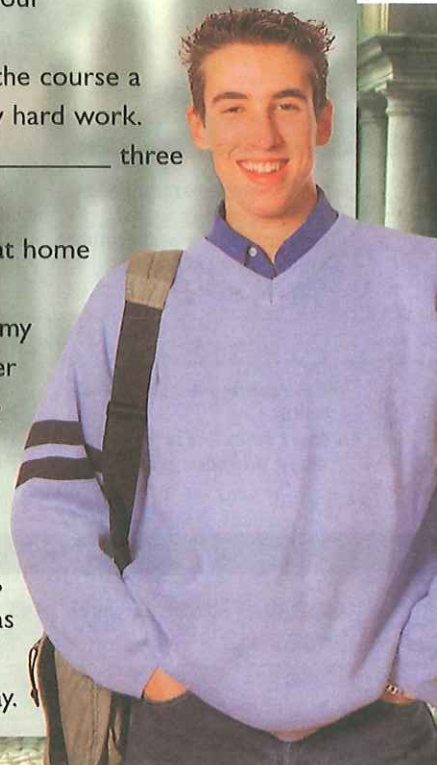
Tenses and questions

1 **T 1.1** Read and listen to Maurizio. Then complete the text, using the verbs in the box.

'm enjoying	'm going to work	live	started
'm studying	come	can speak	went



My name's **Maurizio Celi**. I (1) _____ from Bologna, a city in the north of Italy. I'm a student at the University of Bologna. I (2) _____ modern languages – English and Russian. I also know a little Spanish, so I (3) _____ four languages. I (4) _____ the course a lot, but it's really hard work. The course (5) _____ three years ago. I (6) _____ at home with my parents and my sister. My brother (7) _____ to work in the United States last year. After I graduate, I (8) _____ as a translator. I hope so, anyway.



2 Complete the questions about Carly.

- 1 Where does she come from?
- 2 _____ live?
- 3 _____ live with?
- 4 What _____ studying?
- 5 _____ enjoying the course?
- 6 How many _____ speak?
- 7 _____ did her course start?
- 8 What _____ after she graduates?

T 1.2 Listen to Carly, and write the answers to the questions.

3 Complete the questions to Carly.

- 1 'Which university do you go to?'
'I don't go to a university. I study at home.'
- 2 '_____ a job?'
'Yes, I do. A part-time job.'
- 3 'What _____ at the moment?'
'I'm writing an essay.'
- 4 '_____ to England?'
'Fifteen years ago.'
- 5 '_____ name?'
'Dave.'
- 6 '_____?'
'He's an architect.'

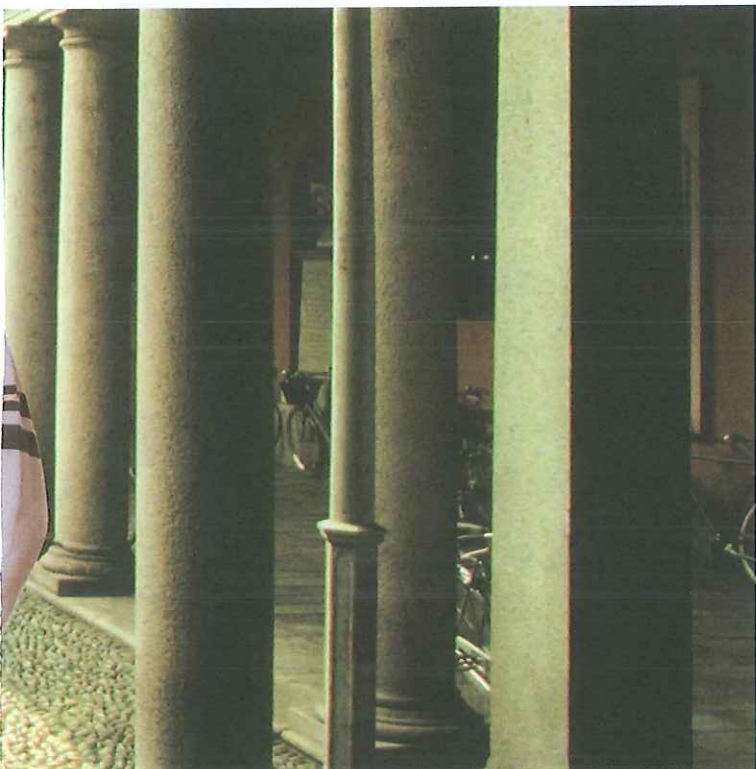


GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Find examples of present, past, and future tenses in the texts about Maurizio and Carly.
- 2 Which tenses are the two verb forms in these sentences?
What is the difference between them?
He lives with his parents.
She's living with an English family for a month.
- 3 Match the question words and answers.

What ...?	Because I wanted to.
Who ...?	Last night.
Where ...?	\$5.
When ...?	A sandwich.
Why ...?	By bus.
How many ...?	In New York.
How much ...?	Jack.
How ...?	The black one.
Whose ...?	It's mine.
Which ...?	Four.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 1.1 and 1.2 p129



PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

- Where ... live?
- ... have any brothers or sisters?
- What ... like doing at the weekend?
- Where ... go for your last holiday?

Make more questions. Use some of the question words in the Grammar Spot on p7. Ask your teacher some of the questions.

2 In groups, ask and answer the questions.

- Do you like listening to music?
- What sort of music do you like?
- What are you wearing?
- What is your teacher wearing?
- What did you do last night?
- What are you doing tonight?

3 Write a paragraph about you. Use the text about Maurizio to help you.



Getting information

4 Your teacher will give you some information about Joy Darling, a postwoman. You don't have the same information. Ask and answer questions.

Student A

Joy Darling started working as a postwoman ... (When?). She drives a van because she delivers letters to a lot of small villages.

When did she start working as a postwoman?

Because she delivers letters to a lot of small villages.

Student B

Joy Darling started working as a postwoman thirty years ago, when she was 22. She drives a van because ... (Why?).

Thirty years ago.

Why does she drive a van?

Check it

5 Choose the correct verb form.

- 1 Hassan *comes* / *is coming* from Syria.
- 2 He *speaks* / *is speaking* Arabic and French.
- 3 Today Tom *wears* / *is wearing* jeans and a T-shirt.
- 4 *Are you liking* / *Do you like* black coffee?
- 5 Last year she *went* / *goes* on holiday to Florida.
- 6 Next year she *studies* / *is going to study* at university



VOCABULARY

Using a bilingual dictionary

- 1 Look at this extract from a French/English bilingual dictionary.

Information in brackets (...) helps you to find the right translation.

The part of speech (n. = noun)

The translation

The pronunciation in phonetic symbols

Nouns and verbs are in the same entry.

~ means repeat the headword, so this word is **booking**.

Other words made with **book** come afterwards.

book /bʊk/ n. livre m. (of tickets, etc) carnet m. ~s (comm.) comptes m. pl, v.t. (reserve) retenir; (write down) inscrire. ~v.i. retenir des places. ~able a. qu'on peut retenir. (fully) ~ed. complet. ~ing office, guichet m.

bookcase /'bʊkkeɪs/ n. bibliothèque f.

bookseller /'bʊksɛlə(r)/ n. libraire m./f.

bookshop /'bʊkʃɒp/ n. librairie f.

bookstall /'bʊkstɔ:l/ n. kiosque (à journaux) m.

- 2 What are these words? Write *noun*, *verb*, *adjective*, *adverb*, *preposition*, or *past tense*.

bread _____	beautiful _____	on _____
hot _____	in _____	came _____
write _____	never _____	eat _____
quickly _____	went _____	letter _____

- 3 These words have more than one meaning. Write two sentences that show different meanings. Use a dictionary.

	Sentence 1	Sentence 2
book	I'm reading a good book.	I booked a room at a hotel.
kind		
can		
mean		
flat		
play		
train		
ring		

T 1.3 Listen to some sample answers.

- 4 What are the everyday objects in the pictures? Look around the room you are in. Find five things you don't know the words for in English. Look them up in a dictionary.



READING

Communication

- 1 How many different ways can people communicate?



- 2 Your teacher will give you some ideas to communicate, but you can't use words! Mime to your partner, and your partner has to guess what they are.
- 3 Read the text quickly and match the headings to the paragraphs.

A HISTORY OF COMMUNICATION

HOW WE COMMUNICATE

COMMUNICATION TODAY

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN PEOPLE AND ANIMALS

- 4 Match the pictures on p11 to each of the four ancient societies in paragraph three.
- 5 Read the text again and answer the questions.
- 1 Which animals are mentioned? What can they do?
 - 2 What is special about human communication? What can *we* do?
 - 3 Which four forms of media are mentioned in the last paragraph?
 - 4 What is good and bad about information technology today?

What do you think?

- What can animals do that people can't?
- How do *you* like to communicate?
- What is happening in information technology now?



PEOPLE

the great communicators

We can communicate with other people in many different ways. We can talk and write, and we can send messages with our hands and faces. There is also the phone (including the mobile for chatting and text messaging), the fax, and e-mail. Television, film, painting, and photography can also communicate ideas.

Animals have ways of exchanging information, too. Bees dance and tell other bees where to find food. Elephants make sounds that humans can't hear. Whales sing songs. Monkeys use their faces to show anger and love. But this is nothing compared to what people can do. We have language – about 6000 languages, in fact. We can write poetry, tell jokes, make promises, explain, persuade, tell the truth, or tell lies. And we have a sense of past and future, not just present.

Communication technologies were very important in the development of all the great ancient societies:

- Around 2900 BC, paper and hieroglyphics transformed Egyptian life.
- The ancient Greeks loved the spoken word. They were very good at public speaking, drama, and philosophy.
- The Romans developed a unique system of government that depended on the Roman alphabet.
- In the 14th century, the printing press helped develop new ways of thinking across Europe.

Radio, film, and television have had a huge influence on society in the last hundred years. And now we have the Internet, which is infinite. But what is this doing to us? We can give and get a lot of information very quickly. But there is so much information that it is difficult to know what is important and what isn't. Modern media is changing our world every minute of every day.



LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Neighbours

1 Who are your ideal neighbours? Complete the questionnaire on the right, then discuss your answers with a partner.

2 'Good walls make good neighbours'. What does this mean? Do you agree?

3 You will hear Mrs Snell and her new neighbour, Steve, talking about each other.

Work in two groups.

T 1.4 Group A Listen to Mrs Snell.

T 1.5 Group B Listen to Steve.

4 Answer the questions.

- 1 When did Steve move into his new flat?
- 2 Is it a large flat?
- 3 What's his job? Is it a good job?
- 4 Does he work long hours?
- 5 What does he wear for work?
- 6 Who is staying with Steve at the moment?
- 7 What time did Steve turn off the music?
- 8 What is Steve doing tonight?
- 9 Why doesn't Mrs Snell want to speak to Steve?

Compare your answers with a partner from the other group. What are the differences?

QUESTIONNAIRE

My ideal neighbours are people who ...

	Yes	No
... say hello when I see them.	☐	☐
... I never see.	☐	☐
... are very quiet.	☐	☐
... often come round for a cup of coffee.	☐	☐
... come round to borrow things.	☐	☐
... make themselves at home in my house.	☐	☐



Roleplay

Work in groups of three.

Student A You are Steve.

Student B You are Mrs Snell.

Student C You are another neighbour. You have invited them to your flat for coffee.

Continue the conversation below. Talk about these things.

- Steve's job
- Steve's brother
- the music

Neighbour Do you two know each other?

Steve Well, we met a few days ago.

Mrs Snell But we didn't introduce ourselves. I'm Mrs

Steve Pleased to meet you.

Neighbour Steve works in advertising, you know ...

What do you think?

- What do you understand by the words 'generation gap'?
- Write down three things that young people think about older people and three things that older people think about young people. In groups, compare ideas.



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions 1

1 We use certain expressions in different social situations.

I'm sorry I'm late!

Don't worry. Come and sit down.

Match the expressions and responses. When do we use these expressions?

How are you?

Hello, Jane!

How do you do?

See you tomorrow!

Good night!

Good morning!

Hello, I'm Ela Paul.

Excuse me!

Bless you!

Have a good weekend!

Thank you very much indeed.

Make yourself at home.

Sleep well!

Yes. Can I help you?

Good morning!

Fine, thanks.

Pleased to meet you, Ela.

Not at all. Don't mention it.

Thanks.

Same to you!

That's very kind. Thank you.

Bye!

How do you do?

Hi, Habiba!

T 1.6 Listen and check. Practise saying them.

2 Test a partner. Say an expression. Can your partner give the correct response?

3 With your partner, write two short conversations that include some of the social expressions. Read your conversations to the class.





2 The way we live

Present tenses • *have/have got* • Collocation – daily life • Making conversation

STARTER



These flags all belong to English-speaking countries. Unscramble the names of the countries.



1 ratliasau



2 wen dazenal



3 thuos facari



4 toscandl



5 het tunied sesatt



6 danaca

PEOPLE AND PLACES

Present tenses and *have/have got*

- 1 Read the texts. Match a country from the Starter with a text and a photograph. Complete the texts with the words from the boxes.

a ☐ exports enjoy immigrants huge

This country has quite a small population, just 16 million, but the country is _____. The people are mainly of European descent, but there are also aborigines and a lot of south-east Asian _____. People live in towns on the coast, not so much inland, because it is so hot. They live a lot of their lives outdoors, and _____ sports, swimming, and having barbecues. This country _____ wool – it has more than 60 million sheep!

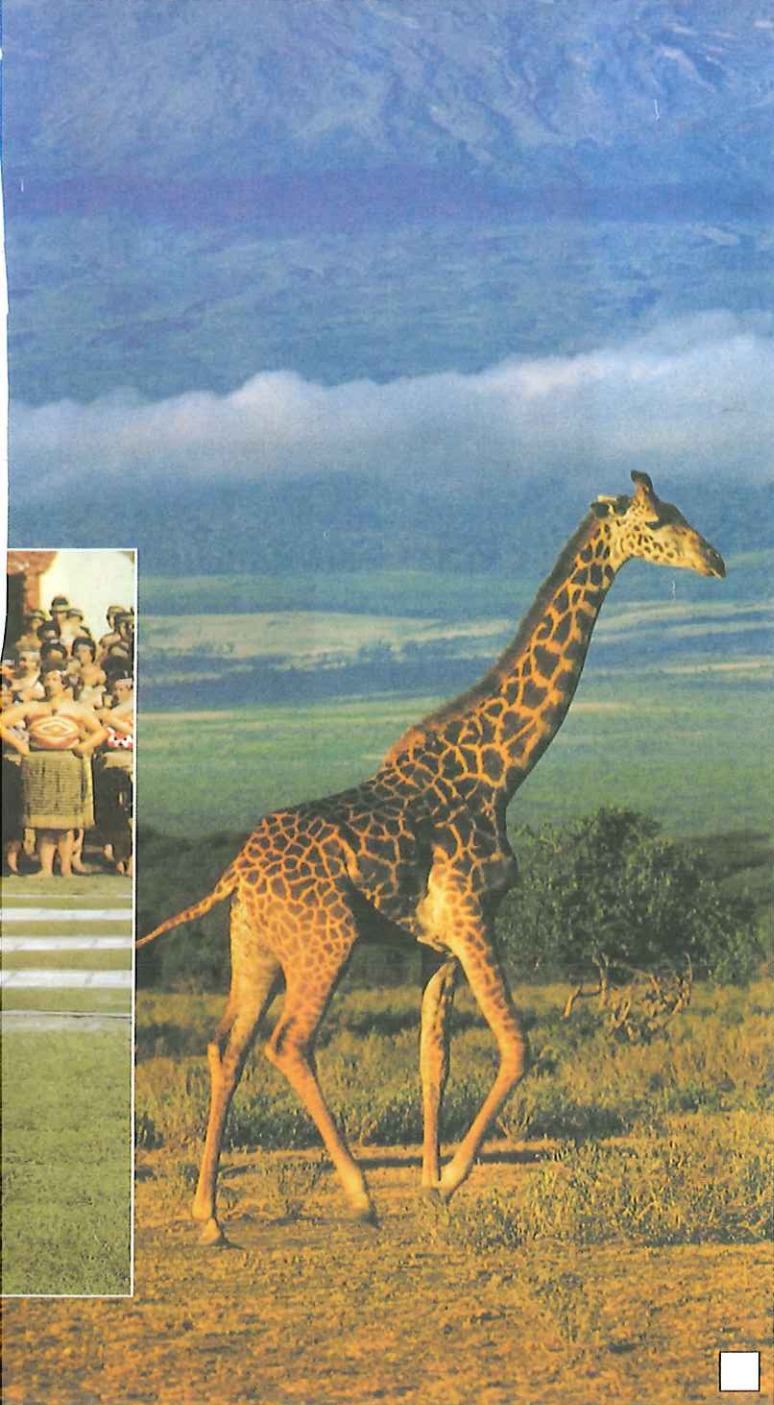
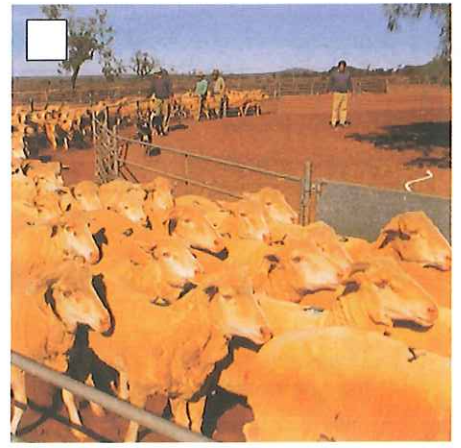
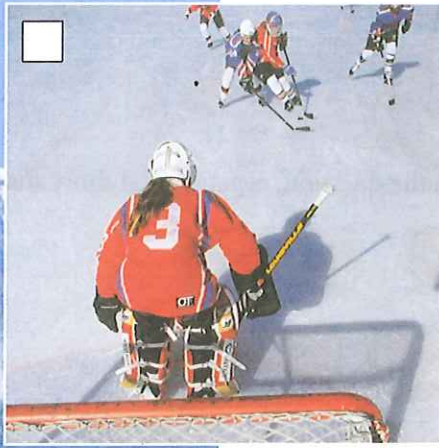
b ☐ favourite variety has only

This is the second biggest country in the world, but it has a population of _____ 30 million. It is so big that there is a _____ of climates. Most people live in the south because the north is too cold. It is famous for its beautiful mountains and lakes – it _____ more lakes than any other country. Their _____ sports are baseball and ice hockey.

c ☐ elephants grows black climate

This country has a population of about 45 million. Of these, 76 per cent are _____ and 12 per cent white. It has a warm _____. Either it never rains, or it rains a lot! It is the world's biggest producer of gold, and it exports diamonds, too. It _____ a lot of fruit, including oranges, pears, and grapes. In the game reserves you can see a lot of wildlife, including lions, _____, zebras, and giraffes.





2 **T 2.1** Listen to three people describing the other countries. Match a country from the Starter with a description and a photograph.

d ☐ e ☐ f ☐

3 Close your books. Remember three facts about each country.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 What tense are all the verb forms in texts a–c? Why?
- 2 Look at the sentences. Which refers to *all time*? Which refers to *now*?
She has three children.
She's having a shower.
- 3 Is *have* or *have got* used in texts a–c? And in d and e?
Is *have got* more formal or informal?

► Grammar Reference 2.1–2.4 p130

4 Give some similar facts about your country.

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Practise the forms of *have* and *have got* in the question, negative, and short answer.

Do you have a car?

Yes, I do.

No, I don't.

Have you got a car?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

I don't have a computer.

I haven't got a computer.

T 2.2 Listen and repeat.

2 Ask and answer about these things with a partner, using *have* or *have got*:

- a computer
- a credit card
- brothers and sisters
- a stereo
- an iPod
- your parents/a holiday home
- a camera
- a mobile phone
- your sister/a car
- a bicycle
- a pet
- your brother/a motorbike

Getting information

3 Work with a partner.

Student A Look at this chart.

Student B Look at the chart from your teacher.

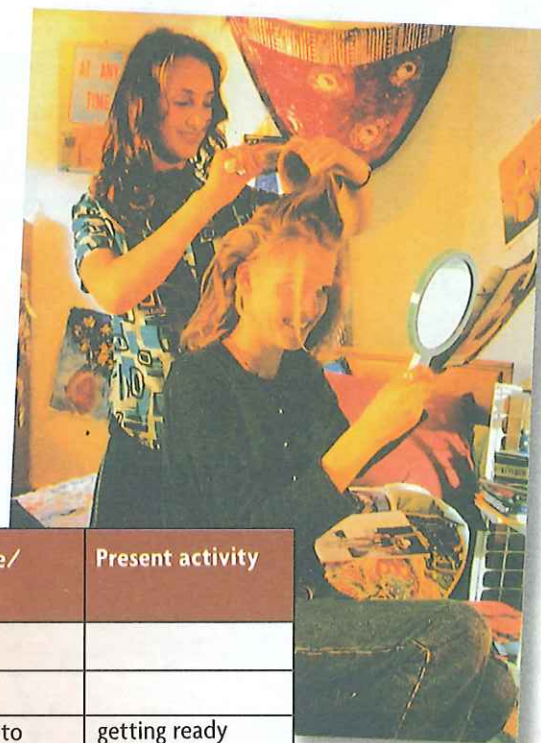
Name and age	City and country	Family	Occupation	Free time/holiday	Present activity
Mohamed, 26					
Sarah, 38					
Nicole, 15	New York, the United States	two brothers	student at high school	- listens to music - Florida or Mexico	getting ready to go out
Jeff, 54, and Wendy, 53	Melbourne, Australia	one daughter and three grandchildren	He ... office. She ... hairdresser.	- tennis, swimming - Bali every summer	having a barbecue in the back yard

Write questions to find the information about the people in your chart.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| City/country | • Where does he ... from? |
| Family | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ... married? • Does she have ... ? • What ... do? |
| Occupation | • Has he got ... ? |
| Free time/holiday | • How many ... ? |
| Present activity | • What ... doing at the moment? |

T 2.3 Listen and compare.

4 Ask and answer questions with your partner to complete your chart.



5 Think of questions to ask about free time and holiday activities.

- What do you do in your free time?
- What do ... at the weekend?
- ... any sports?
- Do you like ... ?
- Where ... holiday?
- Do ... winter holiday?

Stand up! Ask two or three students your questions. Use short answers when necessary. Find out who has the most hobbies and holidays.

Do you like skiing?

No, I don't.

Check it

6 Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- ☐ Where you go on holiday?
☐ Where do you go on holiday?
- ☐ Do you have any children?
☐ Do you have got any children?
- ☐ I'm Hans. I'm coming from Germany.
☐ I'm Hans. I come from Germany.
- ☐ This is a great picnic! Everyone is smiling.
☐ This is a great picnic! Everyone smiles.
- ☐ I don't have a mobile phone.
☐ I no have a mobile phone.
- ☐ Jack's a policeman, but he doesn't wear a uniform.
☐ Jack's a policeman, but he no wear a uniform.
- ☐ 'Where is Haleh?' 'She's sitting by the window.'
☐ 'Where is Haleh?' 'She sits by the window.'
- ☐ I'm liking black coffee.
☐ I like black coffee.

VOCABULARY

Daily life

1 Match the verbs and nouns.

have
wash
watch
talk

a film on TV
to my friends
my hair
breakfast

make
listen
relax
do

to music
my homework
a cup of tea
on the sofa

have
clear up
do
have/put

posters on the wall
the mess
a shower
the washing-up

cook
send
put on
read

magazines
a meal
make-up
emails

T 2.4 Listen and check.

2 Match the activities from exercise 1 with the correct room.

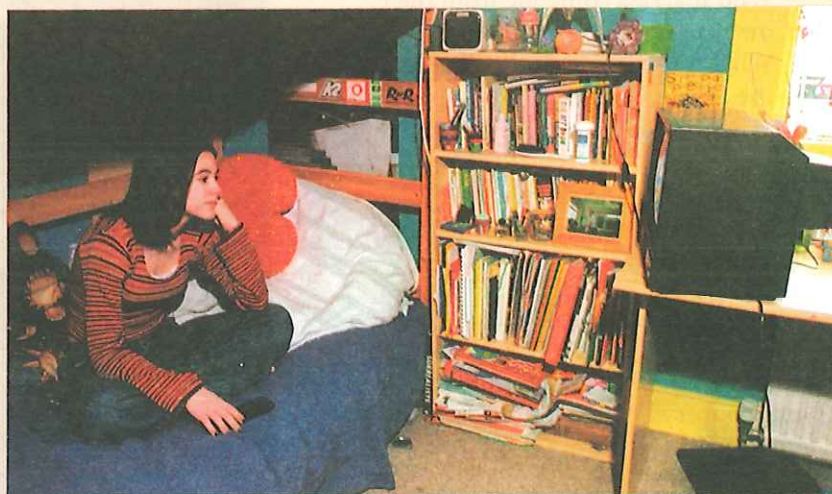
Kitchen

Bathroom

Living room

Bedroom

3 Do you like where you live? Choose your favourite room. What do you do in that room?



I like my bedroom a lot because I've got lots of posters on the walls. I listen to music and do my homework ...

I like my living room. The walls are white, and I love the big, comfortable sofa ...

4 Describe your favourite room to a partner. Don't say which room it is. Can your partner guess?

READING AND SPEAKING

Living in the USA

- 1 Close your eyes and think of the United States. Write down the first five things you think of.

The Empire State Building
Cheeseburger and fries

Compare your list with other students.

- 2 Read the introduction to the magazine article. Then work in three groups.

Group A Read about Aziz.

Group B Read about Endre.

Group C Read about Yuet Tung.

- 3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why and when did he/she come to the US?
- 2 What does he/she do?
- 3 What does he/she like about living in the US?
- 4 What was difficult at the beginning?

- 4 Find a partner from each of the other two groups. Compare the three people.

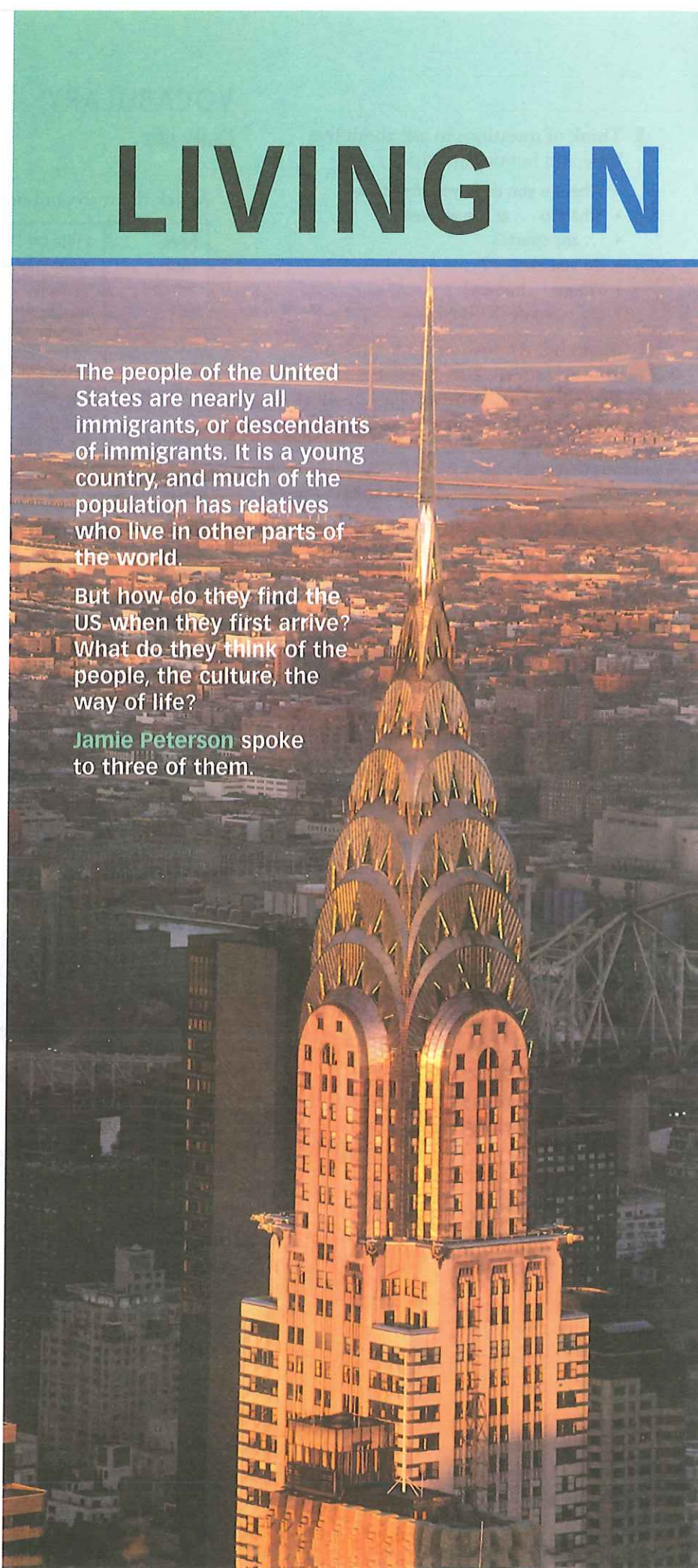
- 5 Answer the questions with your group.

- 1 What do the people have in common?
- 2 Are they all happy living in the US?
- 3 Who has other members of their family living there?
- 4 Do they all have children?
- 5 Who married someone from their own country?
- 6 What do Aziz and Endre like about the US?
- 7 What do they say about their own country?
- 8 Do they like the people?
- 9 What do they say about Americans and their cars?

What do you think?

- What do you like best about living in your country? What would you miss if you lived abroad?
- Do you know any foreigners living in your country? What do they like about it? What do they find different?

LIVING IN



The people of the United States are nearly all immigrants, or descendants of immigrants. It is a young country, and much of the population has relatives who live in other parts of the world.

But how do they find the US when they first arrive? What do they think of the people, the culture, the way of life?

Jamie Peterson spoke to three of them.

THE USA



Aziz Tounsi
aged 24, from Tunisia

Aziz came from Tunis to New York ten years ago. He wanted to study English here. At first he missed everything – the sunshine, the food, his family. But now he has a successful business with his three brothers and his wife. They run a sports store in New Brunswick. Aziz's wife is also Tunisian, and they have two children who go to American schools.

When asked about the future, Aziz says without hesitation, 'I want to work hard and be successful.' He certainly works hard. He's at the store all day, then works as a driver in the evening. 'I like living here,' he says. 'You can be what you want.'

'When I first came here, I didn't speak the language, and it was winter. It was so cold! There was snow! Now nearly all my family are here, not only in New York, but also in California, and in Texas. We meet about once a month and have a huge Tunisian family meal! We're all happy here.'



Endre Boros
aged 45, from Hungary

Endre is a mathematician at Rutgers University, New Jersey. He came from Budapest thirteen years ago. 'I had an opportunity to come here for two years.' After a year, his wife came to join him, and since then they've had a daughter, so they decided to stay.

'At first it was very strange. Everything is so big here,' he says. 'I started to feel happy when I bought a car. Now I go everywhere by car. In Hungary, we only use the car at weekends, but here your car is part of your life. Nobody walks anywhere.'

How does he find the people? 'Very friendly. The first question everybody asks you is "Where are you from?" People talk to you here, they start conversations. I like the fact that there are people from all over the world.'

What about the way of life? 'The thing I like best is the independence. Nobody tells me what to do. Here you can do what you want, so you learn to make decisions for yourself. I feel in control.'



Yuet Tung
aged 31, from Hong Kong

Yuet Tung is her Chinese name, but in English she's known as Clara. She came to the US eight years ago and studied fine art. Now she works on Madison Avenue for a publisher. She married a Vietnamese American three years ago, and they live in Long Island. They don't have any children yet.

What does she think of living in New York? 'It's very similar to Hong Kong. It's a busy city, very exciting, and people walk very fast! I like the stores here. They're huge, and it's cheaper than Hong Kong. But you need a car here. In Hong Kong everyone uses public transportation, because it's good and it's cheap. At first I hated driving here, but it's OK now.'

What does she like best? 'The space. Here I live in a house with a yard. In Hong Kong it is so crowded. And the people are friendly. When I go jogging, everyone says "Hi!" And the food is from every country in the world.'

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

You drive me mad (but I love you)!

- Complete these sentences about the people in your life. Tell a partner.
 - My mother/father drives me mad when she/he ...
 - I don't like people who ...
 - I hate it when my brother/sister ...
 - It really annoys me when friends ...

- Choose one person in your life. What annoying habits does he/she have?

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Does he/she ...? | Is he/she ...? |
| • always arrive late | • untidy |
| • talk too loudly | • always on the phone |
| • leave things on the floor | • never on time |

What annoying habits do *you* have? Discuss with your partner.

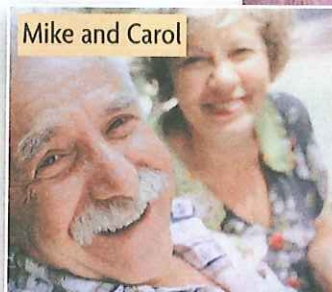
- You are going to listen to a radio programme called *Home Truths*. Two couples, Carol and Mike, and Dave and Alison, talk about their partner's annoying habits. Look at the pictures below. What are their annoying habits?

T 2.5 Listen and write the correct names under each picture below.

Dave and Alison



Mike and Carol



- Are these sentences true (✓) or false (X)? Correct the false sentences.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Carol and Mike never watch television. | 5 Dave never does any jobs at home. |
| 2 Mike doesn't listen when his wife speaks to him. | 6 Dave is bad at his job. |
| 3 Carol makes the decisions in their house. | 7 Alison tidies up Dave's mess. |
| 4 Mike shouts at his wife when she's driving. | 8 Alison is very organized. |

What do you think?

- Do men or women typically complain about their partners doing these things?
 - watching sport on TV
 - driving badly
 - taking a long time to get ready
 - not tidying things away
- What do you think men are generally better at? What are women better at?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making conversation

1 T 2.6 Listen to two conversations. Maria and Jean-Paul are foreign students in Britain. Their teachers, James and Sylvia, are trying to be friendly. Which conversation is more successful? Why?

2 Obviously, it is impossible to tell someone how to have a conversation, but here are some things that help.

- Ask questions.
- Show that you're interested.
- Don't just answer *yes* or *no*.
- Try to add a comment of your own.
- Don't let the conversation stop.

Find examples of these in Jean-Paul and Sylvia's conversation on p119.

3 T 2.6 Listen again to Jean-Paul and Sylvia's conversation, paying special attention to the stress and intonation. Practise the conversation with a partner.

4 Match a line in **A** with a reply in **B** and a further comment in **C**.

A	B	C
1 What a lovely day it is today!	I'm enjoying it.	Was it a good game?
2 It's very wet today.	Yes, no problems.	That's very kind of you.
3 How are you today?	I'm very well, thanks.	Where did you find it?
4 Did you have a nice weekend?	No, I missed it.	We had lunch and went for a walk.
5 How do you find living in London?	Thank you.	The plane was a bit late, but it didn't matter.
6 Did you have a good journey?	Thank you very much.	Makes you feel miserable, doesn't it?
7 Did you watch the football yesterday?	Yes.	I got it in Paris last year.
8 What a lovely jacket you're wearing!	Yes, it was lovely.	How about you?
9 If you have any problems, just ask me for help.	Yes, it is. Thank you.	It was a bit strange at first, but I'm getting used to it.
10 Excuse me. Is this your scarf?	Mm. Horrible.	Beautiful, isn't it?

T 2.7 Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner. Remember to use good stress and intonation.

5 Think of three questions to ask a partner about each of these subjects.

- last weekend
- something they are wearing
- learning English

Now have a conversation with your partner. Ask your questions.

Try to sound interested in the replies and keep the conversation going.





3

It all went wrong

Past tenses • Word formation • Time expressions

STARTER



Here are the past tense forms of some irregular verbs. Write the infinitives.

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1 _____ were | 4 _____ told | 7 _____ took | 10 _____ could |
| 2 _____ saw | 5 _____ said | 8 _____ gave | 11 _____ made |
| 3 _____ went | 6 _____ had | 9 _____ got | 12 _____ did |

THE BURGLARS' FRIEND

Past Simple

- 1 **T 3.1** Read and listen to the newspaper article. Why was Russell the burglars' friend?

The burglars' friend

IT was 3 o'clock in the morning when four-year-old Russell Brown woke up to go to the toilet.

His parents were fast asleep in bed. But when he heard a noise in the living room and saw a light was on, he went downstairs.

There he found two men. They asked him his name, and told him they were friends of the family.

Unfortunately, Russell believed them. They asked him where the video recorder

His parents were fast asleep in bed

was. Russell showed them, and said they had a stereo and CD player, too.

The two men carried these to the kitchen. Russell also told them that his mother kept her purse in a drawer in the kitchen, so they took that. Russell even gave them his pocket money – 50p.

They finally left at 4 a.m.

They said, 'Will you open the back door while we take these things to the car, because we don't want to wake Mummy and Daddy, do we?' So Russell held the door open for them. He then went back to bed.

His parents didn't know about the burglary until they got up the next day. His father said, 'I couldn't be angry with Russell because he thought he was doing the right thing.'

Fortunately, the police caught the two burglars last week.

- 2 Write the past forms of these irregular verbs from the article.

wake _____	leave _____
hear _____	hold _____
find _____	think _____
keep _____	catch _____

- 3 **T 3.2** You will hear some sentences about the story. Correct the mistakes.

Russell woke up at 2 o'clock.

He didn't wake up at 2.00! He woke up at 3.00.

- 4 Write the questions to these answers.

1 Because he wanted to go to the toilet.

Why did he wake up?

2 They were in bed.

3 Because he heard a noise and saw a light on.

4 Two.

5 They told him they were friends of the family.

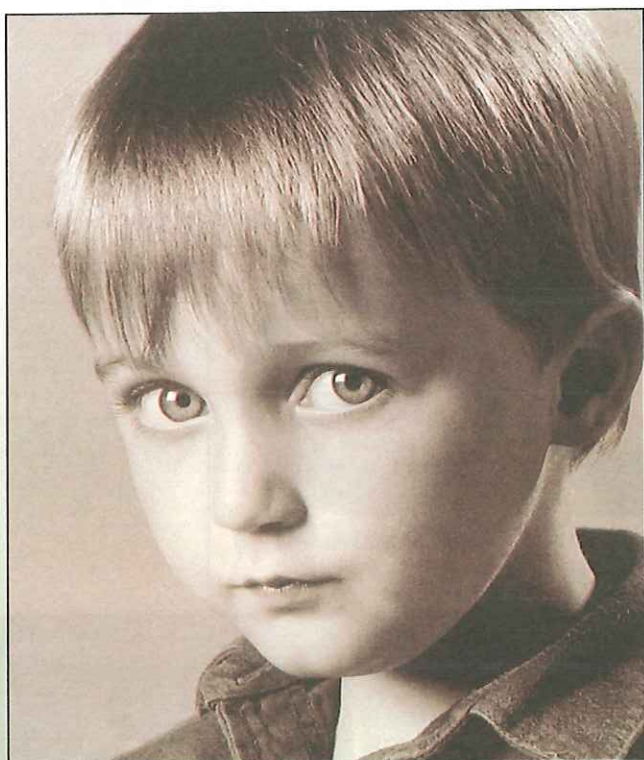
6 In a drawer in the kitchen.

7 50p.

8 At 4 a.m.

9 The next day. (*When ... find out about ... ?*)

10 Last week.



Russell, 4, made thieves feel at home

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 What tense are nearly all the verbs in the article? Why? How do we form the question and negative?

- 2 Write the Past Simple of these verbs.

a ask _____	c like _____
show _____	believe _____
want _____	use _____
walk _____	d stop _____
start _____	plan _____
b try _____	
carry _____	

- T 3.3** Listen and repeat.

- 3 How is the regular past tense formed?
How is the past tense formed when the verb ends in a consonant + y?
When do we double the final consonant?

There is a list of irregular verbs on p143.

▶ Grammar Reference 3.1 p131

PRACTICE

Making connections

- 1 Match the verb phrases. Then make sentences using both verbs in the past. Join the sentences with *so*, *because*, *and*, or *but*.

I broke a cup, but I mended it with glue.

break a cup	answer it
feel ill	mend it
make a sandwich	wash my hair
have a shower	laugh
lose my passport	be hungry
call the police	go to bed
run out of coffee	buy some more
forget her birthday	find it
phone ring	say sorry
tell a joke	hear a strange noise

- T 3.4** Listen and compare your answers.

Talking about you

- 2 Ask and answer these questions with a partner. Make more questions, using the Past Simple.

What did you do ... ?

- last night
- last weekend
- on your last birthday
- on your last holiday

I watched TV.

I went swimming.

PARTNERS IN CRIME

Past Simple and Continuous

- 1 Check the meaning of these verbs. What are the past forms? Which two are regular?

fill	steal	hide	throw
think	destroy	take	cut

- 2 Read the newspaper story and write the past forms of the verbs in exercise 1 in the gaps 1–8.
- 3 Answer the questions.
- What did Pierre Duboulay steal?
 - Was his mother also a thief?
 - Where are they now?
- 4 Put these lines into the story (...).
- where he **was living** with his mother
 - while he **was working** as a lorry driver
 - just as they **were closing**
 - while they **were having** supper
 - because he **was wearing** a security guard's uniform

T 3.5 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

- 1 What tense are the verb forms in exercise 4?

Why are they used?

Notice the pronunciation of *was/were*.

/hi: wəz wɜ:kɪŋ/ /hi: wəz livɪŋ/

/ðei wə kleʊzɪŋ/ /ðei wə hævɪŋ/

T 3.6 Listen and repeat.

- 2 How do you form the question and negative of these sentences?

He was working.

They were having supper.

- 3 Look at these sentences. What's the difference between them?

When they arrived, she made some coffee.

When they arrived, she was making some coffee.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 3.2 and 3.3 p132

- 5 Take turns to read aloud the story of Pierre and his mother.

The thief, his mother, and \$2 billion



Duboulay leaving court

PIERRE DUBOULAY, 33, from Alsace, in France, is the greatest art thief in Europe. Between 1995 and 2004, (...), he (1)_____ 239 paintings from museums in France, Austria and Denmark. He went into the museums (...) and (2)_____ the paintings under his coat. Nobody looked at him (...).

Back in his apartment, (...), he (3)_____ his bedroom with priceless works of art. His mother, Sylvie, 53, (4)_____ all the paintings were copies. One day (...), the police arrived, and they (5)_____ Pierre to the police station. Sylvie was so angry with her son that she went to his room, took some paintings from the walls, and (6)_____ them into small pieces. Others she took and (7)_____ into the river. Altogether she (8)_____ art worth two billion dollars!

Both mother and son are now in prison for many years.



Madeleine of France by Corneille de Lyon



Cheating Benefits its Master by Peter Breugel



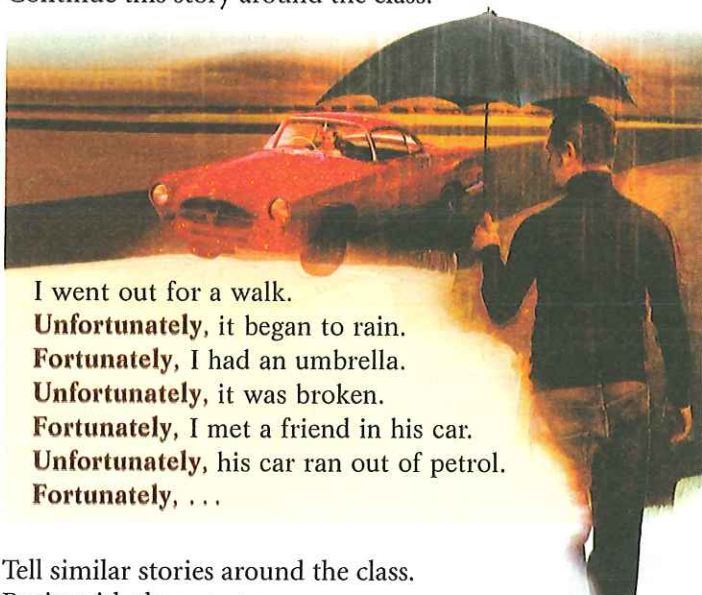
PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

- Choose the correct verb form.
 - I *saw* / *was seeing* a very good programme on TV last night.
 - While I *shopped* / *was shopping* this morning, I *lost* / *was losing* my money. I don't know how.
 - Last week the police *stopped* / *were stopping* Alan in his car because he *drove* / *was driving* at over eighty miles an hour.
 - How *did you cut* / *were you cutting* your finger?
 - I *cooked* / *was cooking* and I *dropped* / *was dropping* the knife.
 - When I *arrived* / *was arriving* at the picnic, everyone *had* / *was having* a good time.
- Complete the sentences with the verbs in the Past Simple or Past Continuous.
 - While I _____ (go) to work this morning, I _____ (meet) an old friend.
 - I _____ (not want) to get up this morning. It _____ (rain) and it was cold, and my bed was so warm.
 - I _____ (listen) to the news on the radio when the phone _____ (ring).
 - But when I _____ (pick) up the phone, there was no one there.
 - I _____ (say) hello to the children, but they didn't say anything because they _____ (watch) television.

fortunately/unfortunately

- Continue this story around the class.



I went out for a walk.
Unfortunately, it began to rain.
Fortunately, I had an umbrella.
Unfortunately, it was broken.
Fortunately, I met a friend in his car.
Unfortunately, his car ran out of petrol.
Fortunately, ...

- Tell similar stories around the class. Begin with these sentences.
 - I lost my wallet yesterday.
 - It was my birthday last week.
 - We went out for a meal last night.
 - There was a really good film on TV last night.

Exchanging information

- Look at the photo and read the newspaper headline. Who is the boy? What is a 'spending spree'?

Teenager goes on spending spree with brother's credit card

Teenager Hugo Fenton-Jones stole his elder brother Peter's ... (What?) while Peter was working on his computer. He then flew to ... (Where?) and stayed at the Ritz Hotel. His room cost £ ... a night (How much?). Next he took a taxi to the Champs-Élysées. While he was shopping, he bought ... (What?).



Back at the hotel, Hugo phoned his friends and invited them to join him in Paris. They were having lunch ... (Where?) when Peter phoned.

He was furious with his brother and ordered him to return home immediately.

Hugo flew back ... (When?). When he arrived at London airport, his brother and his father were waiting for him. 'They aren't speaking to me at the moment,' said Hugo yesterday. 'They're too angry.'

- Work in pairs.

Student A Read the article on this page.

Student B Read the article your teacher will give you.

You do not have the same information. Ask and answer questions to complete the information about the teenager.

A

What did Hugo Fenton-Jones steal?

He was working on his computer.

B

He stole his brother's credit card.

What was his brother doing?

- Read aloud the completed article with your partner.

READING AND LISTENING

Sherlock Holmes

- 1 Sherlock Holmes is a very famous character in literature. Underline what you think is the correct answer to these questions.
 - 1 Sherlock Holmes was a *doctor/scientist/detective*.
 - 2 He was *American/English/Scottish*.
 - 3 He lived in *Chicago/London/Edinburgh*.
 - 4 Stories about him first appeared in the *19th/20th/21st* century.
- 2 You are going to read a Sherlock Holmes story called *The Three Students*. Look at the picture and headings. What can you guess about the story?
- 3 Read Part 1 and answer the questions.
 - 1 Who are the people in the picture?
 - 2 Where was Sherlock Holmes staying?
 - 3 What did Mr Weaver receive that afternoon?
 - 4 What was lying on the floor when he returned to his room after tea?
 - 5 Why couldn't Mr Weaver call the police?
 - 6 Who is Bannister?
 - 7 What clues did Bannister and Mr Weaver find?
 - 8 What do they think happened?
- 4 Read Part 2. Are these sentences true (✓) or false (X)? Correct the false ones.
 - 1 The tutor's room was on the same floor as the three students'.
 - 2 Holmes couldn't see into the room through the window.
 - 3 He found a clue on the carpet.
 - 4 The papers were next to the window because it was easier to read them in the light.
 - 5 The intruder saw Mr Weaver returning.
 - 6 He escaped through the study window.
 - 7 Holmes found another clue in the bedroom.
- 5 Read Part 3. Which of the three students do you think copied the papers? Discuss with a partner and then the class.

THE THREE

PART 1 ~ Who copied the exam questions?

SHERLOCK HOLMES was staying in one of England's most famous university towns. One evening he received a visit from an old friend, Mr Henry Weaver, a tutor at one of the colleges. He seemed very nervous and excited.

'I need your help, Holmes. Something very serious happened at my college this afternoon.'

Holmes was very busy. 'Why didn't you call the police?' he said irritably.

'No, no that's impossible. We can't have a scandal at the college. Let me explain. You see, tomorrow is the first day of the university examinations, and this afternoon I received the Greek translation papers. I put them on the desk in my room while I went to have tea with a friend. When I returned, I saw immediately that the papers were lying on the floor by the window.'

'I see,' said Holmes. 'Please continue.'

'Well, at first I thought that perhaps my servant, Bannister, was responsible, but of course he said no, and I believe him. He and I examined the room very carefully.'

'And what did you find?' asked Holmes impatiently.

'On the table next to the window we found a broken pencil. Also, on my desk there was a small ball of black mud. There were no signs of entry at the window. Please help me, Holmes. It's clear that someone copied the exam questions. If I don't find who did it, I will have to cancel the exam and there will be a scandal.'

'I need to visit your room,' said Holmes.

PART 2 ~ Looking for clues

They walked towards the tutor's room, which was on the ground floor. Holmes tried to look in through the window but he wasn't tall enough. Above lived three students, one on each floor. Holmes entered the room and examined the carpet.

'Nothing,' he said. 'Let me look at the table by the window.'

'What can you see?'

'Ah, yes, it's clear what happened. Someone took the papers one at a time from your desk over to the window table to copy them, because from there he could see when you were returning.'

'But nobody could see me. I came back through the side door.'

'Ah, so you surprised him and he had to leave hurriedly. Did you hear someone running away as you entered?'

'No.'

'Interesting. So, we just have one small ball of black mud as a clue. Now tell me, where does that door go to?'

'My bedroom.'

'Can I examine it?'

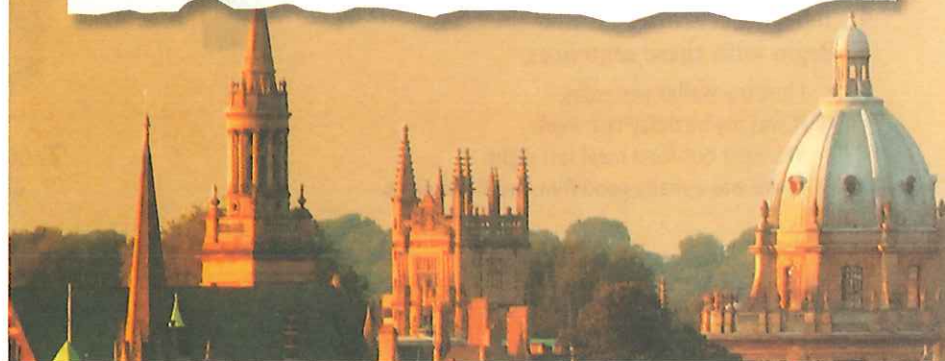
'Yes, of course.'

Holmes followed Weaver into his bedroom.

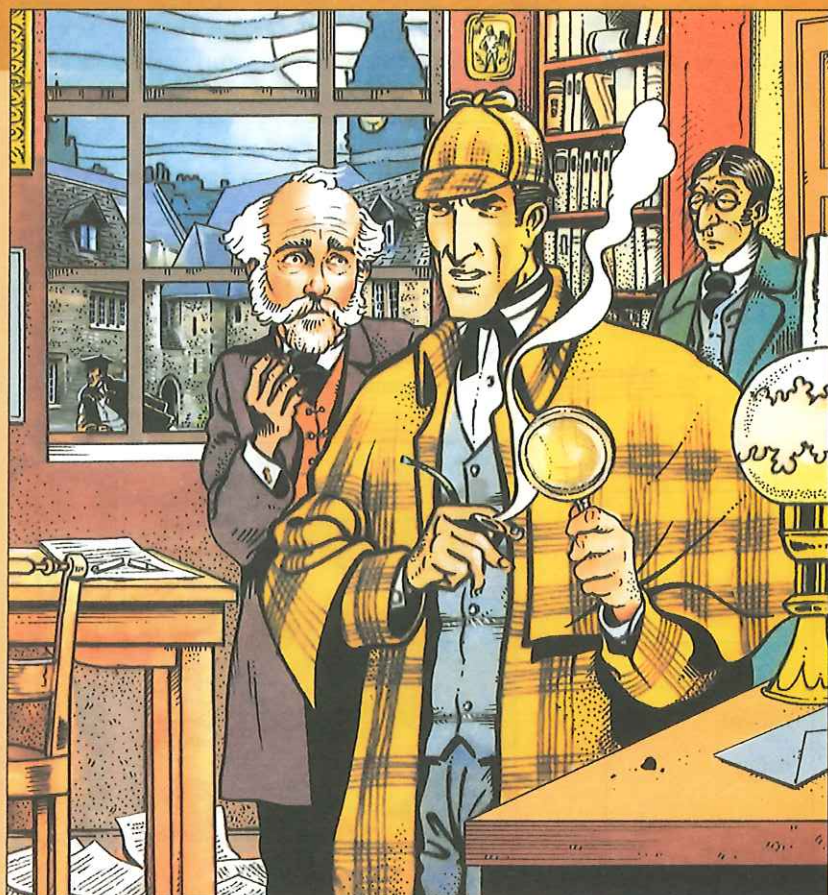
'Hello,' said Holmes, 'what's this? Another small ball of black mud, exactly like the one on the desk. Clearly your visitor came into the bedroom.'

'I don't understand. Why did he do that?'

'Well, when you came back so suddenly, he ran into your bedroom to hide. Look at the bedroom window, it's open. That is obviously how he escaped.'



STUDENTS



PART 3 ~ The three suspects

'Now,' said Holmes, 'the three students who live above you. Are they all taking this examination?'

'Yes.'

'Tell me about them.'

'Well, on the first floor is Gresham, an excellent student and an athlete, particularly good at the long jump. He's hard-working but poor.'

'And the second floor?'

'Daulat Ras lives there. He is from India – very quiet and hard-working, but Greek translation is his weak subject. And finally there's Miles McLaren on the top floor. A very intelligent student, one of the best when he chooses to work – but he's very lazy and very worried about this exam.'

'Now tell me,' said Holmes, 'how tall are these young men?'

'How tall? What a strange question. Erm ... I think Miles is taller than the Indian, but Gresham is the tallest, over six feet.'

'Ah, that's important. Now, Weaver. I wish you goodnight. I'll return tomorrow.'

Next morning Sherlock Holmes left his house very early before he returned to the tutor's rooms. Mr Weaver was waiting nervously for him.

Listening

- 6 T 3.7 Listen to Part 4. Whose ideas were correct? Did you guess who copied the papers? How did Sherlock Holmes solve the mystery? What was his explanation? Who wrote the letter? What did it say? Are the examinations going to take place?

What do you think?

- Do you think Sherlock Holmes was clever to solve this mystery?
- Why did Gresham decide not to take the exam?

Language work

- 7 Write the past form of these verbs from the story. Which are irregular?

receive	<u>received</u>
find	_____
say	_____
walk	_____
put	_____
try	_____
go	_____
can	_____
see	_____
copy	_____
think	_____
leave	_____
examine	_____
run	_____

Telling the story

- 8 Tell the story to a partner in your own words. Begin like this.

One evening when Sherlock Holmes was working at his desk, there was a knock at the door. It was his friend Henry Weaver, a college tutor. Mr Weaver wanted ...

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Noun, verb, and adjective endings

- 1 Look at these sentences from the story of Sherlock Holmes on page 27. Are the underlined words nouns, adjectives or verbs?

He and I examined the room very carefully.

Are they all taking this examination?

Good luck in Africa.

It was such a lucky chance that you were staying in town.

- 2 Look at these noun and adjective endings.

nouns	-ation -sion -ment -ness -ence -ance
adjectives	-y -ly -ous -ful -less

Complete the charts below and mark the stress.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Adjective
_____	ex'plain	_____	'friendly
invi'tation	_____	fame	_____
_____	trans'late	'laziness	_____
de'cision	_____	_____	'patient
_____	en'joy	_____	'happy
_____	em'ploy	care	_____
im'provement	_____	_____	'different
dis'cussion	_____	help	_____
_____	'organize	'beauty	_____
_____	i'magine	guilt	_____
_____	'advertise	_____	im'portant
im'provement	_____	'danger	_____

- 3 Complete the sentences with one of the words from exercise 1.

- I asked the teacher for help, but unfortunately, I didn't understand his _____.
- Please, can you help me _____ this into English?
- My English _____ a lot after I lived in London for a month.
- Watch out! Be _____ or you'll fall.
- There are many _____ between my two children. They aren't similar at all.
- Motor racing is a very _____ sport.
- Didn't you _____ the film? I thought it was wonderful.
- Thank you for your advice. It was very _____.
- The United Nations is an international _____.
- We received an _____ to Ted and Sarah's wedding.

T 3.8 Listen and check.

Making negatives

- 3 We can make adjectives and verbs negative by using these prefixes.

adjectives	un- im- in- il-
verbs	un- dis-

Complete the sentences, using a word from the box and a prefix.

pack possible agree tidy fair like
appear employed legal polite



- Don't go into my bedroom. It's really _____.
- I can't do maths. For me, it's an _____ subject.
- I don't _____ fish. I just prefer meat.
- In England it's very _____ to ask someone how much they earn.
- When we arrived at the hotel, we _____ our suitcases.
- I was _____ for two years. Then I got a job in an office.
- 'I think learning languages is stupid.' 'I _____. I think it's a good idea.'
- The thief stole my bag, ran into the crowd and _____. I never saw him again.
- It's _____ to drive if you aren't insured.
- You gave her more money than me! That's _____!

T 3.9 Listen and check.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Time expressions



01:27

February

March

M	T	W	T	F	S	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29					

WK	M	T	W	T	F	S	S
9							
10	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
11	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
12	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
13	27	28	29	30	31		

- 1 There are two ways of saying dates. What are they?

8/1/98 16/7/85 25/11/02

T 3.10 Listen and check.

Look at the same dates in written American English.
What's the difference?

1/8/98 7/16/85 11/25/02

T 3.11 Listen and check.

- 2 Practise these dates. They are in British English.

4 June 5 August 31 July 1 March 3 February

21/1/1988 2/12/1996 5/4/1980 11/6/1965 18/10/2000 31/1/2005

T 3.12 Listen and check.

What days are national holidays in your country?

- 3 Complete these time expressions with *at*, *on*, *in*, or no preposition.

___ six o'clock	___ Saturday	___ 1995
___ last night	___ December	___ the weekend
___ Monday morning	___ summer	___ two weeks ago
___ the evening	___ yesterday evening	___ January 18

►► Grammar Reference 3.4 p132.

- 4 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- 1 Do you know exactly when you were born?

I was born at two o'clock in the morning on Wednesday, the twenty-fifth of June, 1979.

- 2 When did you last ... ?

- go to the cinema
- go to a shopping mall
- play a sport
- do an exam
- give someone a present
- see a lot of snow
- have a holiday
- comb your hair
- watch TV
- catch a plane



March Mars März Marzo Mai

13 Monday Lundi Montag Lunes Lune

WK	M	T	W	T
9			1	2
10	6	7	8	9
11	13	14	15	16
12	20	21	22	23

4 Let's go shopping!

much/many • some/any • a few, a little, a lot of • Articles • Shopping • Prices

STARTER

Play the alphabet game with things you can buy. Continue around the class.

- A Yesterday I went shopping and I bought an apple.
- B Yesterday I went shopping and I bought an apple and some bread.
- C Yesterday I went shopping and I bought an apple, some bread, and a car.
- D Yesterday ...

THE WEEKEND SHOP

Quantity

- 1 Sarah and Vicky are two students who share a flat. It is Saturday morning, and Sarah has written a shopping list.

T 4.1 Read and listen to their conversation.

- V It says here *milk*. How much milk do we need?
 S Two litres.
 V And eggs? How many eggs?
 S A dozen.
 V And what about potatoes? How many potatoes?
 S A kilo's enough.
 V And butter? How much?
 S Just one packet.

GRAMMAR SPOT

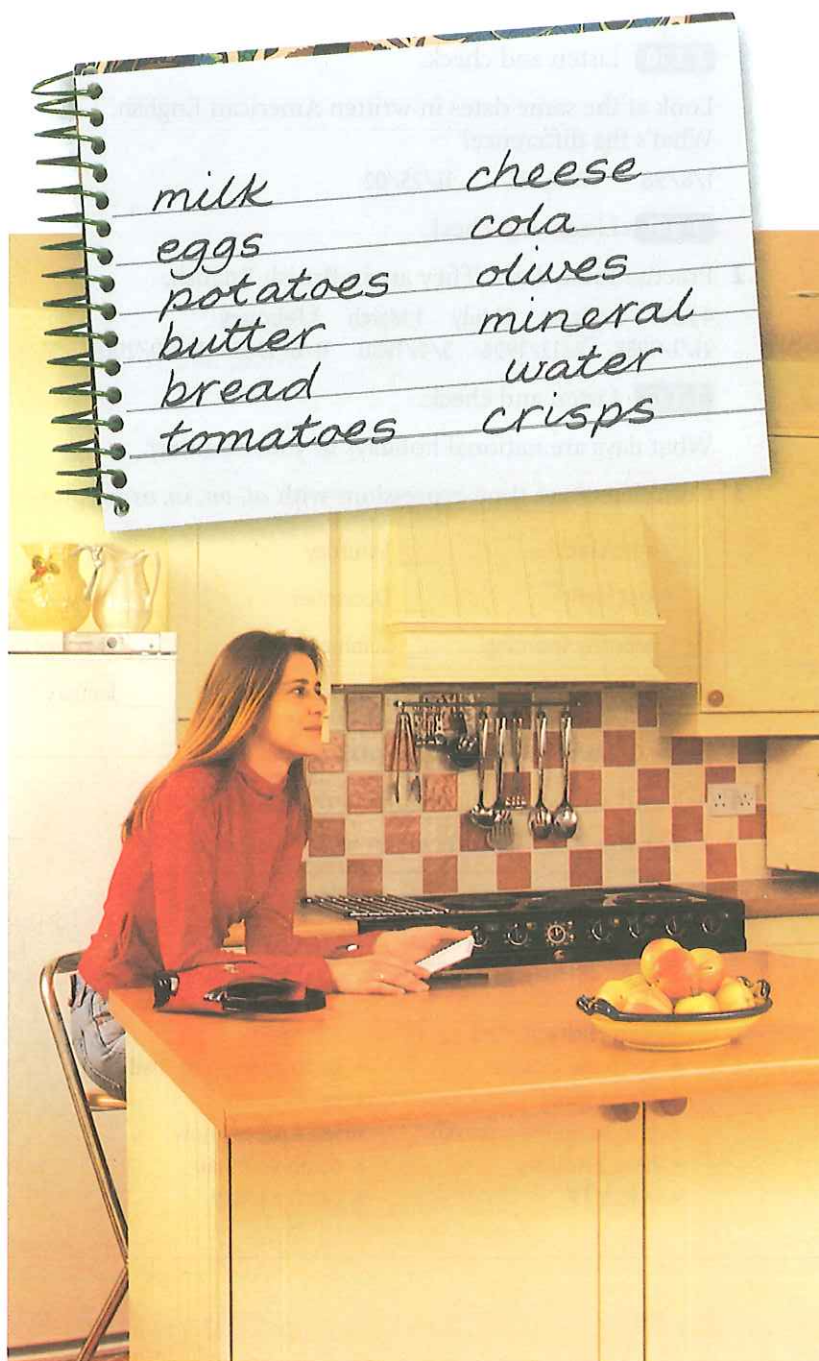
Can we count milk (one milk, two milks)?
 Can we count eggs (one egg, two eggs)?
 When do we say *How much* ... ?
 When do we say *How many* ... ?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.1 p133

- 2 Match these quantities with the shopping list.

two large bottles	six cans
just one white loaf	half a kilo of black ones
200g of Cheddar	four big ones
four packets	

Continue the conversation with a partner.



3 T 4.2 Read and listen to the rest of the conversation.

- V** Do we need anything else?
S Let's have a look. We've got some apples, but there aren't any grapes. And there isn't any coffee, but we've got some tea.
V Is there any orange juice left, or did somebody finish it?
S There's a little, but there isn't much, so we need some more.
V And vegetables? Have we got many vegetables?
S Well, I can see a few carrots, but there aren't many onions.
V Oh, and don't forget we need a lot of crisps. My nephews are coming tomorrow!
S Right, then. I think that's everything. Let's go! By the way, how much money have you got?

GRAMMAR SPOT

- Find seven count nouns (CNs) and four uncount nouns (UNs) in the conversation.
- Tick (✓) the correct columns.

We use ...	with CNs	with UNs	in positive sentences	in questions	in negative sentences
some	✓	✓	✓	✓ (sometimes)	✗
any					
much					
many					
a lot/lots of	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
a few					
a little					

- Look at the forms of *something/someone*, etc. The rules are the same as for *some* and *any*. Find two examples in the conversation in exercise 3.

some		thing
any	+	one/body where

► Grammar Reference 4.1 p133



PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

- Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.
 - Have you got _____ brothers or sisters?
 - We don't need _____ olive oil.
 - Here are _____ letters for you.
 - I need _____ money.
 - Is there _____ petrol in the car?
- Complete the sentences with *much* or *many*.
 - Have you got _____ homework?
 - We don't need _____ eggs. Just half a dozen.
 - Is there _____ traffic in your city?
 - I don't know _____ students in this class.
 - How _____ people live in your house?
- Complete the sentences with *a little*, *a few*, or *a lot of*.
 - I have _____ close friends. Two or three.
 - He has _____ money. He's a millionaire.
 - 'Do you take sugar in coffee?' 'Just _____. Half a spoonful.'
 - 'Have you got _____ CDs?' 'Hundreds.'
 - I'll be ready in _____ minutes.
 - She speaks good French, but only _____ Arabic.

Questions and answers

4 Look at Sarah and Vicky's bathroom. Ask and answer questions with a partner about these things:

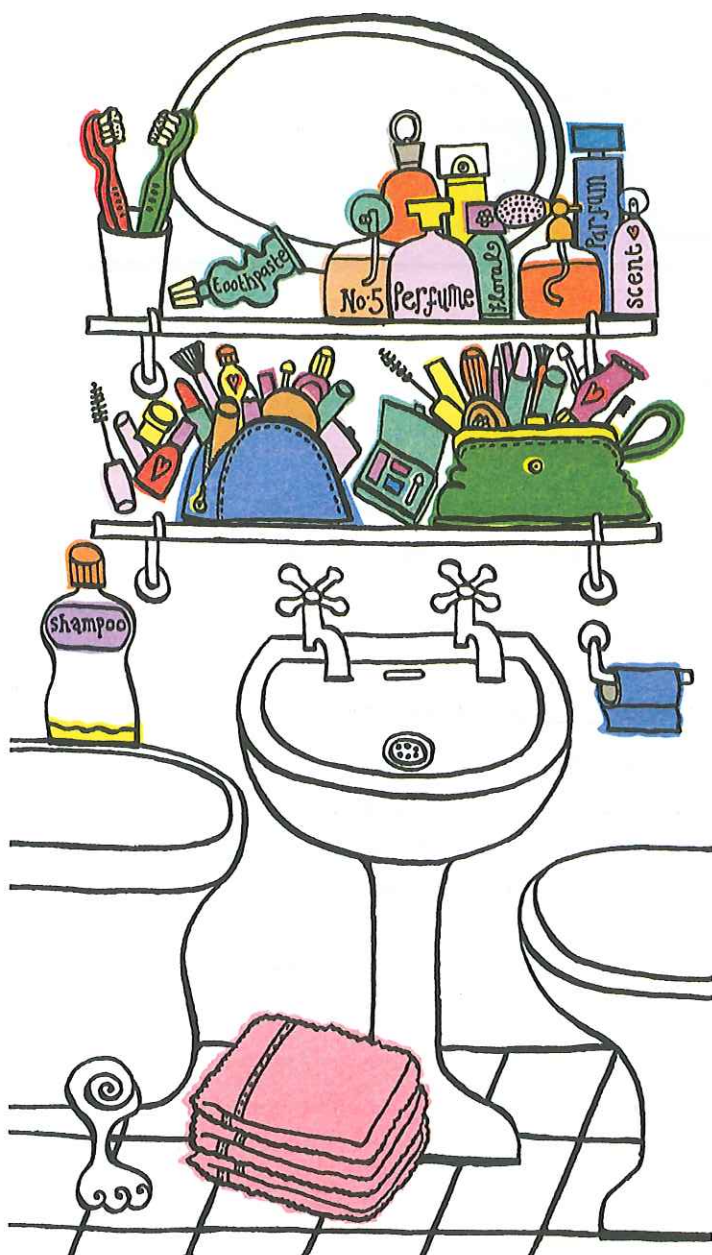
- make-up
- toothbrushes
- hairbrushes
- shampoo
- toothpaste
- soap
- towels
- toilet paper
- bottles of perfume

Have they got much make-up?

Lots.

Is there any soap?

I can't see any.



something/someone/somewhere

5 Complete the sentences with the correct word.

some		thing
any	+	one/body
every		where
no		

- 1 'Did you meet _____ interesting at the conference?'
'Yes. I met _____ who knows you!'
- 2 'Ouch! There's _____ in my eye!'
'Let me look. No, I can't see _____.'
- 3 'Let's go _____ exciting for our holidays.'
'But we can't go _____ that's too expensive.'
- 4 'I'm so unhappy. _____ loves me.'
'I know _____ who loves you. Me.'
- 5 I lost my glasses. I looked _____, but I couldn't find them.
- 6 'Did you buy _____ at the shops?'
'No, _____. I didn't have any money.'
- 7 I'm bored. I want _____ interesting to read, or _____ interesting to talk to, or _____ interesting to go.
- 8 It was a great film. _____ loved it.

T 4.3 Listen and check.

Survey

6 Work in groups. Talk about the good things and bad things about living in your city. Make a list. Compare your list with the class.

Good things

There are a lot of cafés and restaurants.

There are some good shops.

We can go on lots of walks.

Bad things

But we haven't got any good museums.

There aren't many . . .

There's only one . . .

There isn't anywhere that we can . . .

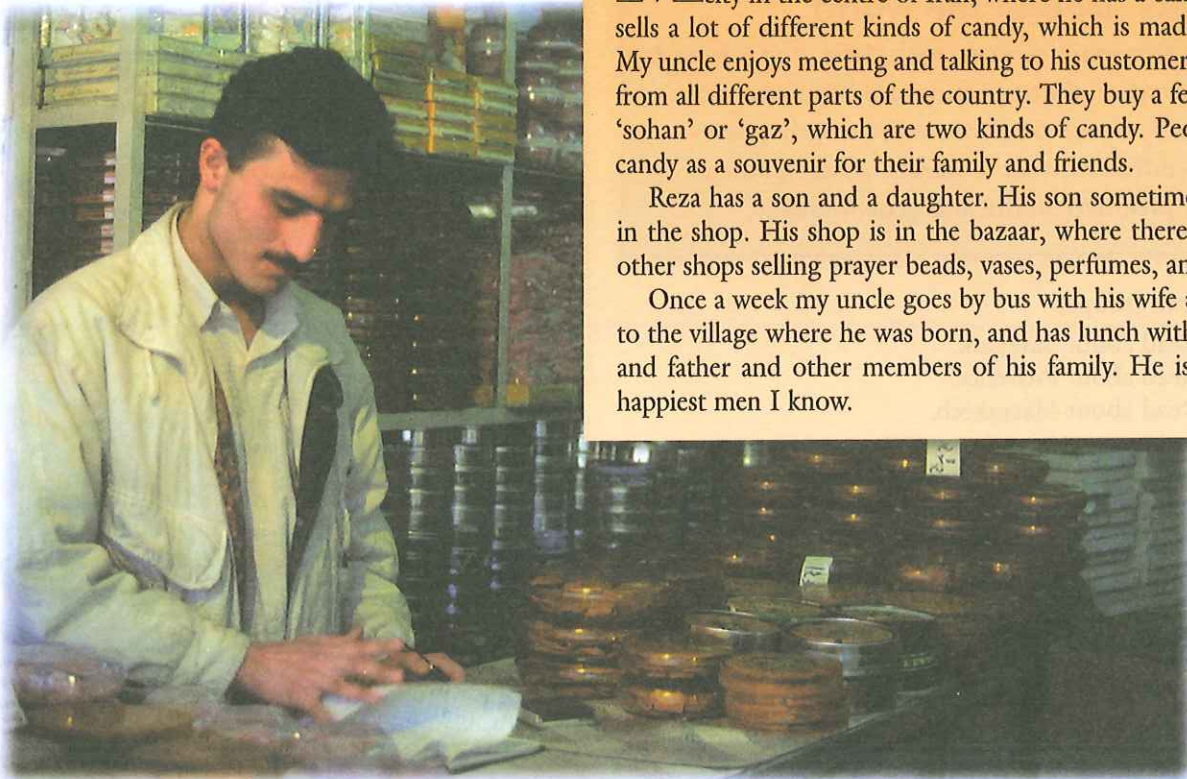
MY UNCLE'S A SHOPKEEPER

Articles

1 **T 4.4** Look at the picture. Read and listen to the text.

2 Answer the questions.

- 1 Who is the man in the picture?
- 2 What is his job?
- 3 Where does he live?
- 4 What does he sell?
- 5 Does he have any children?
- 6 Who helps him in the shop?
- 7 How often does he visit his parents?
- 8 How does he travel to his village?



GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Find examples of the definite article (*the*) and the indefinite article (*a/an*).
a shopkeeper in *the* centre
- 2 Find examples of when there is no article.
Iran made from *nuts*

►► Grammar Reference 4.2 p133

My uncle Reza is a shopkeeper. He lives in an old city in the centre of Iran, where he has a candy shop. He sells a lot of different kinds of candy, which is made from nuts. My uncle enjoys meeting and talking to his customers, who come from all different parts of the country. They buy a few packets of 'sohan' or 'gaz', which are two kinds of candy. People buy the candy as a souvenir for their family and friends.

Reza has a son and a daughter. His son sometimes helps him in the shop. His shop is in the bazaar, where there are a lot of other shops selling prayer beads, vases, perfumes, and textiles.

Once a week my uncle goes by bus with his wife and children to the village where he was born, and has lunch with his mother and father and other members of his family. He is one of the happiest men I know.

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 In pairs, find one mistake in each sentence.

- 1 He's policeman, so his job is sometimes dangerous.
- 2 I have the breakfast at 7 a.m.
- 3 The love is more important than money.
- 4 I come to the school by bus.
- 5 I'm reading one good book at the moment.
- 6 'Where's Jack?' 'In a kitchen.'
- 7 I live in centre of the city, near the hospital.
- 8 My parents bought the lovely house in the country.
- 9 I don't eat the bread because I don't like it.

2 Complete the sentences with *a/an*, *the*, or nothing.

- 1 I have two children, _____ boy and _____ girl. _____ boy is twenty-two and _____ girl is nineteen.
- 2 George is _____ soldier in _____ army, and Nadia is at _____ university.
- 3 My husband goes to _____ work by _____ car. He's _____ accountant. I don't have _____ job. I stay at _____ home and look after _____ children.
- 4 What _____ lovely day! Why don't we go for _____ picnic in _____ park?
- 5 'What did you have for _____ lunch?' 'Just _____ sandwich.'

READING AND SPEAKING

Markets around the world

- 1 Look at the pictures and discuss these questions.
 - 1 What is the difference between a shopping centre and a market?
 - 2 Do you ever go shopping in markets?
 - 3 Is there a market where you live? What can you buy there? Can you bargain for things?
- 2 Read the introduction to an article about three markets in very different parts of the world. Why are markets more interesting than shopping centres?

Markets around the world

Modern shopping centres, with their global brands and international designer names, look the same all over the world. So if you want to buy goods that are different, visit a market. There you can buy fine products made and grown locally.



- 3 Work in three groups.

Group A Read about Bangkok.

Group B Read about Provence.

Group C Read about Marrakech.

- 4 Answer the questions about your market.
 - 1 Where exactly is the market?
 - 2 What days and times is it open?
 - 3 What food does it sell? Give some examples.
 - 4 What other things does it sell?
 - 5 What do you learn about the people who work there?
 - 6 Describe the market. Find some adjectives.
 - 7 What can you do after the market?
 - 8 What do you learn about the town from the text?
- 5 Find a partner from each of the other two groups. Use the photos to introduce your market. Then compare the three markets, using your answers in exercise 4.

What do you think?

Answer the questions with your group.

- Which of the markets would you like to visit most? Why?
- Which do you think is the cheapest / most expensive? Why?
- Have you visited a market in another country? If yes, describe it.
- Close your books and close your eyes. Imagine you are at the market you read about. Tell your partners what you can see.

The floating markets of Bangkok

Bangkok, the capital of Thailand, is a city of contrasts. The tall glass buildings look like any other modern city. But behind them is a place where life hasn't changed for over 100 years – the canals. Built in 1866 by the King of Thailand, these canals are home to many Thai people who still live and work there today. There are four floating markets around Bangkok, and the oldest and most popular is in the town of Damonen Saduak.

This market opens every day from 6.30 a.m. It's best to shop early and go by water taxi. After 9 a.m. the tourist buses arrive, and it's much too busy.

It's a colourful, noisy, fascinating place. Old ladies with huge hats sit in small boats, filled with tropical fruit and vegetables, fresh coconut juice and local food. Did you miss your breakfast? Then just call a seller for a bowl of hot soup. He'll get it from a cooker at the back of his boat!

But the boats don't just sell food. Would you like a traditional hat? A silk dress? A flowered shirt? Then just call and point. After the noise and excitement of the market, continue along the canal. Soon you'll see the wooden houses, orchards, and floating flowers of the canal villages. It's a lovely, peaceful way to finish your trip.



A perfect day in Provence

Every Sunday in a small town called Isle-sur-la-Sorgue in southern France there is a truly amazing market. Isle-sur-la-Sorgue is like Venice. The River Sorgue runs in and out of the old narrow streets and under the many bridges, and on market day every street and bridge is packed with stalls. From early morning, this sleepy little town becomes a noisy, busy place, with sellers calling to you in the singing accent of the south.

You can choose from an amazing selection of olives, hundreds of cheeses, and delicious roast chickens. But it is not just a food market. Antique sellers fill the pavements with beautiful old French furniture, and there are tables covered with antique lace and cloth. Flower sellers invite you to pick from their brightly coloured bunches of flowers. The air is filled with the smell of soaps, herbs, and lavender, all made and grown in Provence. Do you need a sun hat? Did you forget your beach towel? Your choices are endless.

Travellers fill their backpacks with delicious things for Sunday lunch: olive bread, tomatoes, chicken, melon and, of course, a bottle of local mineral water. At 1 o'clock everything closes, and everyone goes home. Then it's time to find a cool place next to the river for a perfect picnic on a perfect day in Provence.



The souks of Marrakech

Marrakech in Morocco looks like a Hollywood film set. It is a city of ancient, sand-coloured buildings and palm trees in the middle of the desert.

In the centre is the main square, Jemaa el Fna. Here you can see dancing snakes and drink Moroccan coffee. But behind the square is the real heart of the city. This is the souk (the Arabic word for market). Hundreds of little shops and stalls are open from early morning till lunchtime, and again in the evening. The souk, with its narrow, busy streets, is divided into lots of smaller souks. There's the aromatic spice souk, the noisy meat souk, the colourful clothing souk, the gold and silver souk, and many more.

Finally, there's the carpet souk. Here, hundreds of handmade Moroccan rugs and carpets cover the pavements. No two rugs are the same. In Mr Youssef's rug shop, he invites you to sit down among all the beautiful carpets. A silver teapot arrives with little glasses and Mr Youssef talks about the different rugs, while his assistants roll them out one by one. Two hours later, after many glasses of traditional mint tea and lots of bargaining, you finally choose your rug and leave much poorer. Then it's time to return to the main square to watch the snakes and count your money.



VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Buying things

- 1 What can you buy or do in these places? Write two things for each place.
Compare your ideas with the class.

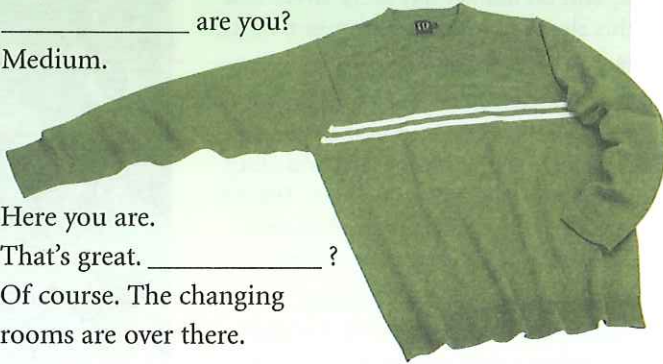
a clothes shop	a pharmacy	a café	a bank	a newsagent's

- 2 **T 4.5** Listen to the conversations. Answer the questions.

- Where are the conversations taking place? Choose from the places in exercise 1.
- What does the customer want?
- Can the shop assistant/cashier help?
- How much does the customer pay?

- 3 Complete these lines from the conversations. Look at the tapescript on p120 and check your answers.

- 1 **A** Hello. Can I help you?
B I _____, thanks.
...
B I'm looking for a sweater _____ . Have you got _____ ?
A I'll just have a look.
_____ are you?
B Medium.



- A** Here you are.
B That's great. _____ ?
A Of course. The changing rooms are over there.
...
B I like it.
A It _____ .
B How much is it?
A £39.99.
B OK. I _____ .
A How would you like to pay?
B _____ .

- 2 **A** _____ help me?
I'm looking for this month's edition of *Vogue*. Can you tell me _____ ?
B Over there.
Middle shelf. Next to *She*.



- 3 **A** Hello. I _____ help me. I've got a bad cold and a sore throat. Can you _____ ?
B OK. You can take these three times a day.
A Thank you. _____ some tissues _____, please?
B Sure. _____ ?
A No, that's all, thanks.



- 4 **A** Good morning. Can I have a _____, please?
B Espresso?
A Yes, please. Oh, and a doughnut, please.
B _____ there aren't _____ .
We've got some delicious carrot cake, and chocolate cake.
A OK. Carrot cake, then.
B Certainly. Is _____ ?
A Yes, thanks.
B _____, please.
A Thank you.



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Prices and shopping

- 1 Look at the way we write and say prices in British and American English. Practise saying them.

British English		American English	
Written	Spoken	Written	Spoken
£1	a pound	\$1	a dollar
50p	fifty p	50¢	fifty cents
£1.99	one pound ninety-nine	25¢	a quarter
£16.40	sixteen pounds forty	10¢	a dime

T 4.6 Listen to the conversations and write the numbers you hear.

- 2 What's the exchange rate between sterling/US dollars and your currency?

There are about five ... to the dollar.

In your country, how much is ... ?

- a pair of jeans
- a packet of cigarettes
- a burger
- a litre of petrol

- 3 Make conversations in these places with a partner.
Use the ideas to help you.

1 in a clothes shop

a shirt/tie
What size are you?
small/medium/large
too small/too big
I'll have it, please.
I'll leave them, thanks.



2 in a pharmacy

conditioner
shaving foam
deodorant
stomach ache
sore throat

3 in a café

a black/white coffee
an espresso/a cappuccino
a pot of tea
a sparkling/still mineral water
a piece of chocolate cake



4 in a post office

some stamps
a phone card
a letter/postcard to Japan
send this parcel to Qatar
buy some envelopes

5 What do you want to do?

Verb patterns 1 • Future forms • Hot verbs • How do you feel?

STARTER

Complete these sentences with ideas about you.

- One day I want to ...
- Right now, I'd like to ...
- I enjoy ... because I like ...
- I can ... but I can't ...
- Tonight I'm going to ...

HOPES AND AMBITIONS

Verb patterns 1

1 Match the people with their hopes and ambitions.

- 1 ☐ I'd like to become a TV presenter.
- 2 ☐ I'm going to be an astronaut and fly to Mars.
- 3 ☐ I'm looking forward to having more time to do the things I want to do.
- 4 ☐ I would love to have one of my plays performed on the London stage.
- 5 ☐ We hope to find work as we go round the world.
- 6 ☐ We're thinking of moving, because the kids will be leaving home soon.

T 5.1 Listen and check.

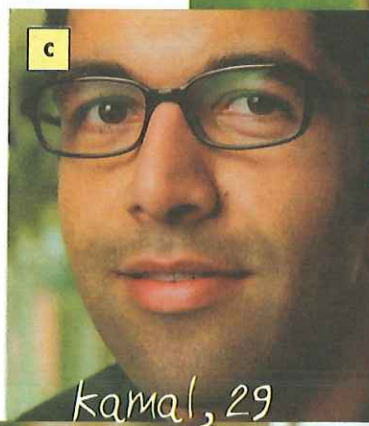
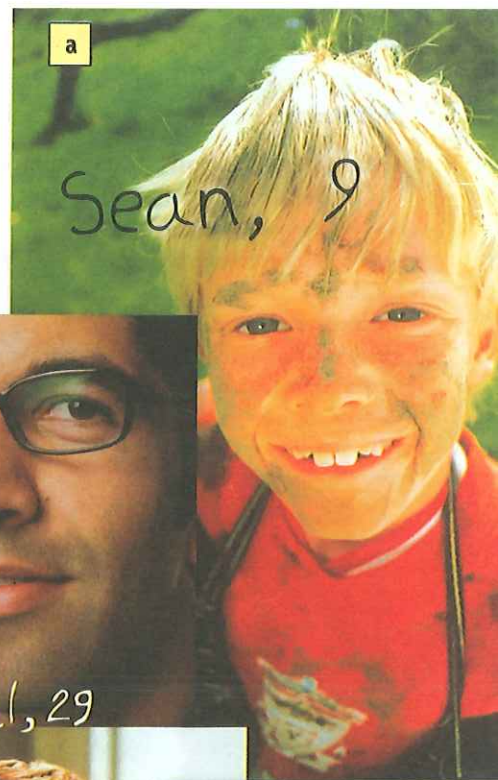
2 Complete the chart.

	Ambitions/Plans	Reasons
Sean		
Mel		
Kamal		
Martyn		
Amy		
Alison		

3 Underline the examples of verb + verb in exercise 1.

I'd like to become a TV presenter ...

Look at the tapescript on p120. Find more examples of verb + verb.



GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words *go abroad*. Put the verb *go* in the correct form.

I want *to go abroad*.

I'd like ...

I can't ...

I'm looking forward to ...

I hope ...

I enjoy ...

I'm thinking of ...

I'd love ...

- 2 What's the difference between these sentences?

I like going to the cinema.

I'd like to go to the cinema tonight.

►► Grammar Reference 5.1 and 5.2 p134

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

- 1 In these sentences, one or two verbs are correct, but not all three. Tick (✓) the correct verbs.

1 I _____ to live in a hot country.

a ☐ want b ☐ enjoy c ☐ 'd like

2 We _____ going to Egypt for our holidays.

a ☐ are hoping b ☐ 're thinking of c ☐ like

3 I _____ go home early tonight.

a ☐ want b ☐ like c ☐ can

4 I _____ to see you again soon.

a ☐ hope b ☐ 'd like c ☐ 'm looking forward

5 Do you _____ learning English?

a ☐ want b ☐ enjoy c ☐ like

6 We _____ having a few days off soon.

a ☐ 're thinking of b ☐ 'd love to c ☐ 're looking forward to

Make correct sentences with the other verbs.

Making questions

- 2 Complete the questions.

1 A I hope to go to university.

B (What/want/study?) _____

2 A One of my favourite hobbies is cooking.

B (What/like/make?) _____

3 A I get terrible headaches.

B (When/start/get/them?) _____

4 A We're planning our summer holidays at the moment.

B (Where/think/go?) _____

5 A I'm tired.

B (What/like/do/this evening?) _____

T 5.2 Listen and check. What are A's answers? Practise the conversations with a partner.

Talking about you

- 3 Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

- What do you like doing on holiday?
- Where would you like to be right now?
- Do you like learning English?
- Would you like to learn any other languages?
- Would you like to have a break now?

- 4 Ask and answer questions about your plans and ambitions.

Which countries ... go to?

How many children ...

What ... after this course?

FUTURE INTENTIONS

going to and will

1 Match the pictures and sentences.

- 1 ☐ They're going to see a football match.
- 2 ☐ I'll pick it up for you.
- 3 ☐ He's going to go to Malaysia.
- 4 ☐ It's OK. I'll answer it.
- 5 ☐ Don't worry. I'll lend you some.
- 6 ☐ We're going out to have a meal.

2 Add a line before and after the sentences in exercise 1.

Before

I haven't got any money.

What's Tom doing next week?

The phone's ringing.

Oh, no! I've dropped one.

What are you and Pete doing this evening?

What are the lads doing this afternoon?

After

Thank you. That's very kind.

I'm expecting a call.

Thanks. I'll pay you back tomorrow.

I won't forget.

I guess he's going on business, right?

United are playing at home.

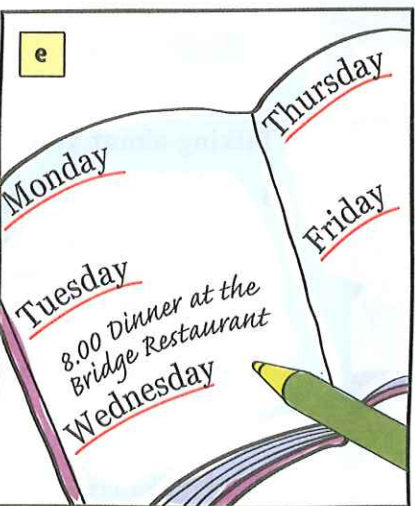
It's my birthday.

T 5.3 Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Notice the forms of *will*.
I'll = short form
I **won't** = negative short form
- 2 All the sentences in exercise 1 express intentions. Three intentions are spontaneous. Which are they? Three of the intentions are premeditated. What happened **before** each one?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 5.3 p134



PRACTICE

Let's have a picnic!

- 1 Your class has decided to have a picnic. Everyone must help. Say what you'll do.

I'll make some sandwiches.

I'll bring some salad.

- 2 Your teacher didn't hear what you said. Listen to your teacher and correct him/her.

Teacher

You

Right. I'll make some sandwiches.

No, I'm going to make some sandwiches!

Oh, all right. Well, I'll bring some salad.

No, no. I'm going to bring some salad!

Discussing grammar

- 3 Choose the correct verb form.

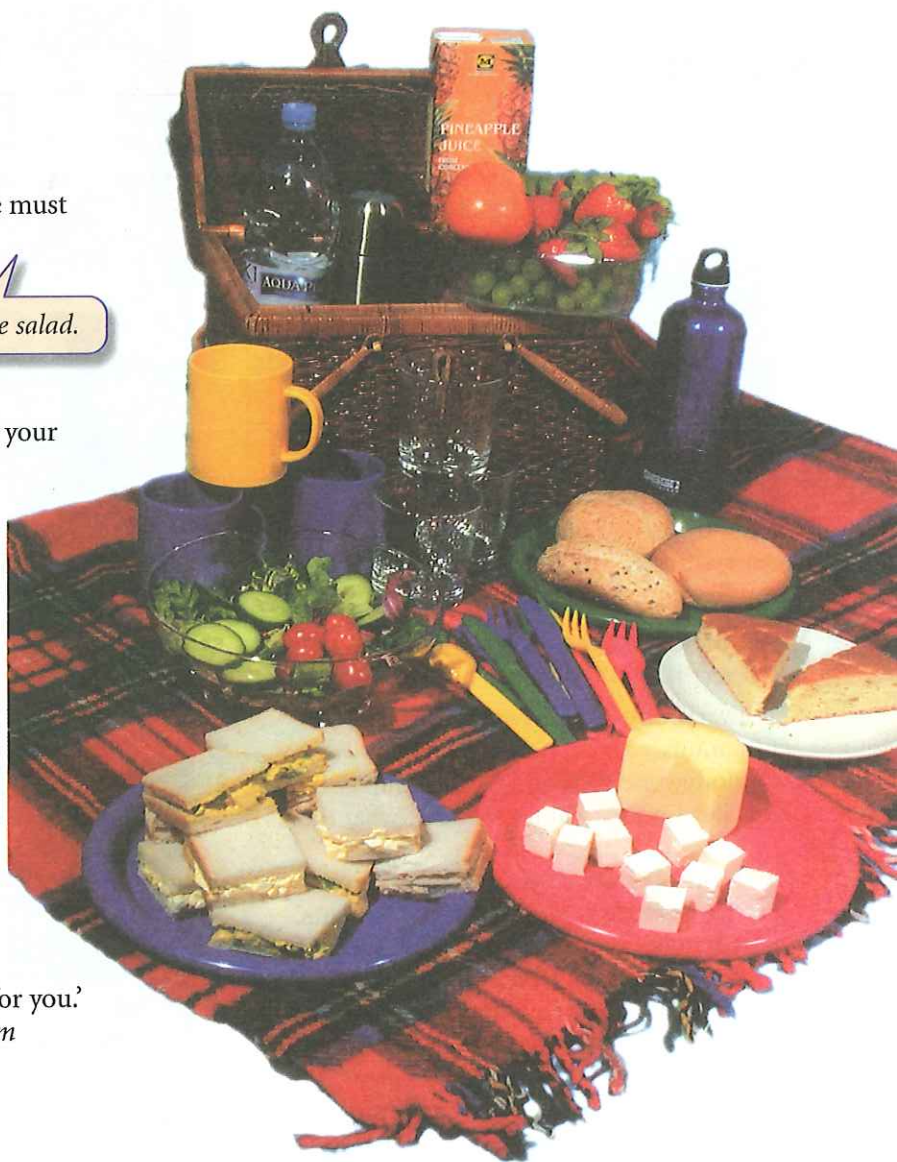
- 1 'My bag is so heavy.'
'Give it to me. *I'll carry / I'm going to carry* it for you.'
- 2 I bought some warm boots because *I'll go / I'm going* skiing.
- 3 'Tony's back from holiday.'
'Is he? *I'll give / I'm going to give* him a ring.'
- 4 'What are you doing this evening?'
'*We'll see / we're going to see* a play at the theatre.'
- 5 You can tell me your secret. *I won't tell / I'm not going to tell* anyone.
- 6 Congratulations! I hear *you'll get married / you're going to get married*.
- 7 'I need to post these letters.'
'*I'll go / I'm going* shopping soon. *I'll post / I'm going to post* them for you.'
- 8 'Now, holidays. Where *will you go / are you going* this year?' 'We don't know yet.'

- 4 **T 5.4** Close your books. Listen to the beginnings of the conversations. Complete them.

Check it

- 5 Correct these sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1 What you want drink? | 5 I'm looking forward to see you again soon. |
| 2 I have a mineral water, please. | 6 I think to change my job soon. |
| 3 I can't to help you. | 7 Phone me tonight. I give you my phone number. |
| 4 It's starting rain. | 8 I see the doctor tomorrow about my back. |



Talking about you

- 6 Talk to a partner about your plans for this evening, tomorrow, next weekend, your next holiday ...

What are you doing/going to do this evening?

Where are you going ... ?

I'm going to stay at home and ...

I'm going to see ...

I think I'll ...

READING

Hollywood kids

- 1 What are some of the problems of being a teenager? Tick (✓) the boxes on the left.

☐ they don't have enough money	☐
☐ their parents don't give them enough attention	☐
☐ they worry about how they look	☐
☐ they have no interests or ambitions	☐
☐ their parents want them to do well in life	☐
☐ they're too old to be children, but too young to be adults	☐

- 2 Read the text about Hollywood kids. What are some of their problems? Tick (✓) the boxes on the right. Are there any differences?

- 3 Are these sentences true (✓) or false (X)? Correct the false sentences.

- Everybody in Hollywood is rich and famous.
- Hollywood kids don't lead ordinary lives.
- They understand the value of what they have.
- Trent Maguire is spoilt and ambitious.
- The adults try hard to be good parents.
- Amanda's mother listens to all her daughter's problems.
- The kids are often home alone.
- Their parents organize every part of their lives.
- The kids don't want to be children.
- All the kids complain about living in Hollywood.

- 4 Answer the questions.

- In what ways do Trent, Amanda, Emily, and Lindsey live unreal lives?
- Does anything surprise you in what the kids say?
- What are their ambitions?

What do you think?

- Do you feel sorry for children in Hollywood? Is there anything about their lives that you would like?
- What is your opinion of their parents?
- Do teenagers around the world think the same as Hollywood kids?
- Do you think it is dangerous to have everything you want?

Hollywood

Growing up in

In Hollywood, everybody wants to be rich, famous, and beautiful. Nobody wants to be old, unknown, and poor. For Hollywood kids, life can be difficult because they grow up in such an unreal atmosphere. Their parents are ambitious, and the children are part of the parents' ambitions.

Parents pay for expensive cars and designer clothes. When every dream can come true, kids learn the value of nothing because they have everything. A 13-year-old boy, Trent Maguire, has a driver, credit cards, and unlimited cash to do what he wants when he wants. 'One day, I'll earn more than my dad,' he boasts.

Parents buy care and attention for their children because they have no time to give it themselves. Amanda's mother employs a personal trainer, a nutritionist, a bodyguard/chauffeur, a singing coach, and a counsellor to look after all her 15-year-old daughter's needs.

Often there is no parent at home most days, so children decide whether to make their own meals or go out to restaurants, when to watch television or do homework. They organize their own social lives. They play no childhood games. They become adults before they're ready.

Hollywood has always been the city of dreams. The kids in L.A. live unreal lives where money, beauty, and pleasure are the only goals. Will children around the world soon start to think the same? Or do they already?

“Looks are very important in Hollywood. If you're good-looking, you'll go far. I want to be a beautician. You grow up really fast in L.A. Everyone is in a rush to be an adult. It's not cool to be a kid.” **Mijanou, aged 18**



kids

Los Angeles isn't easy

“ I live in a hotel and when I come home from school, there are maybe 80 people who say ‘Good day’ to me. It’s their job to say that. In the bathroom there are mirrors everywhere. I love looking at myself. I can spend five hours doing my hair and posing. I’m going to be a model. ”

Emily, aged 10



“ I’ve wanted to get my nose done since I was 12. My friends started having plastic surgery and liposuction during my freshman year of high school. My nose cost \$10,000. But it was worth it. It changed my life. I’m gonna get into the movies. ”

Lindsey, aged 18



“ Everyone thinks Hollywood is so glamorous, but I have news for you. It is really difficult growing up in L.A. Sometimes I think I’m going crazy. I’m going to get out of here just as soon as I can. ”

Zavier, aged 18

VOCABULARY

Hot verbs – *have, go, come*

- 1 The verbs *have, go, and come* are very common in English. Look at these examples from the text on p42–3.

have	go	come
... they have no time ... I have news for you.	You'll go far. I'm going crazy.	Every dream can come true. ... come home from school ...

- 2 Put *have, go, or come* into each gap.

_____ an accident _____ a cold
_____ first in a race _____ wrong
_____ out for a meal _____ a meeting
_____ and see me _____ abroad
_____ shopping

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have* (or *have got*), *go*, or *come*.

- We're _____ a picnic next Thursday. Would you like _____?
- I _____ a terrible headache. Can I _____ home, please?
- You must see my new flat. _____ round and _____ a meal some time.
- 'I'm _____ out now, Mum. Bye!' 'OK. _____ a good time. What time are you _____ home?'
- Hi, Dave. Tariq _____ a shower at the moment. I'll just _____ and tell him you're here.
- _____ on! Get out of bed. It's time _____ to school.
- It's a lovely day. Let's _____ to the park. We can _____ a picnic.
- I'm _____ skiing next week. _____ you _____ any ski clothes I could borrow?

LISTENING

You've got a friend

- 1 Answer these questions.

- Who is your best friend?
- Where did you meet?
- When did you meet?
- How often do you see each other?

- 2 Listen to the first verse of the song. Discuss these questions.

- How can a friend help you when you are in trouble?
- What makes a good friend?
- Does a good friend always agree with you?

- 3 **T 5.5** Listen and complete the song.

You've got a friend, by Carole King

When you're down and troubled
And you need a _____
And nothing, but _____
Close your eyes and think of me
And soon I _____
To brighten up even your darkest nights.

(Chorus)

You just call out my name,
and you know wherever I am
I _____ to see you again.

Winter, spring, _____
All you have to do is call
And I'll be there, yeah, yeah, yeah,
You _____.

If the sky above you
_____ and full of clouds

And that old north _____

Keep your head together

And _____

And soon I'll be knocking on your door.

Hey, _____ that you've got a friend?

People can be so cold

_____ and desert you

Well they'll take your soul if you let them

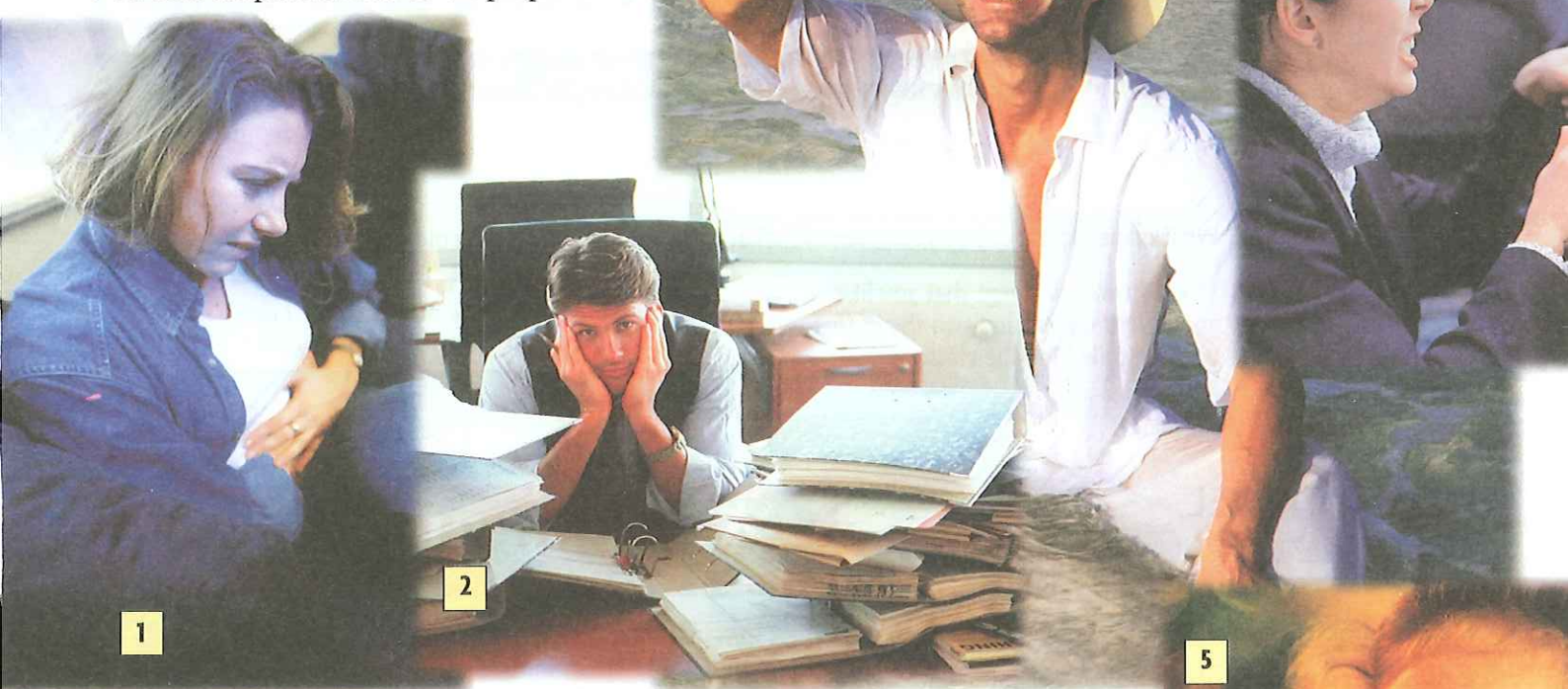
Oh, yeah, but _____

(Chorus)

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

How do you feel?

1 Look at the photos. How do the people feel?



2 All the lines in **A** answer the question *How are you?* Match a line in **A** with a line in **B**.

A	B
1 I feel nervous.	It's so wet and miserable.
2 I don't feel very well.	I'm going on holiday to Australia tomorrow.
3 I'm feeling a lot better, thanks.	My grandfather's going into hospital for tests.
4 I'm really excited.	I think I'm getting the 'flu.
5 I'm fed up with this weather.	Nothing's going right in my life.
6 I'm really tired.	I've got an exam today.
7 I'm a bit worried.	I've got a lot more energy.
8 I feel really depressed at the moment.	I couldn't get to sleep last night.

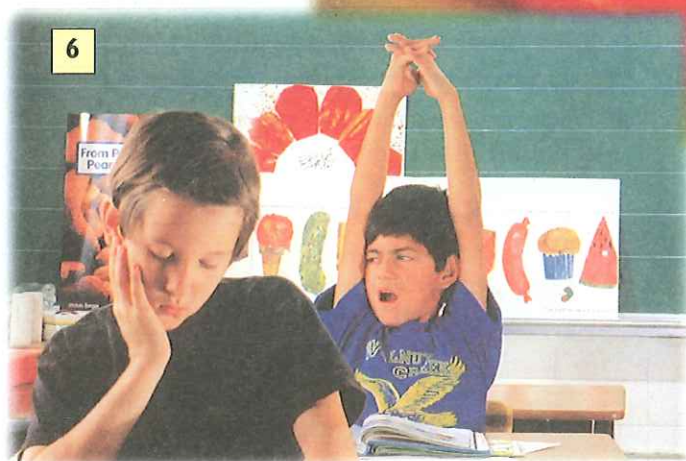
3 Choose a reply for each sentence in exercise 2.

- a Cheer up! Things can't be that bad!
- b Why don't you go home to bed?
- c I'm sorry to hear that, but I'm sure he'll be all right.
- d I know. We really need some sunshine, don't we?
- e Poor you! That happens to me sometimes. I just read in bed.
- f That's great. Have a good time.
- g That's good. I'm pleased to hear it.
- h Good luck! Do your best.

T 5.6 Listen and compare your answers.

4 Make more conversations with a partner about these things:

- a wedding • a visit to the dentist • a letter from the bank
- a big project at work • problems with teenage children





6 Tell me! What's it like?

What ... like? • Comparatives and superlatives • Synonyms and antonyms • Directions

STARTER



- 1 What is the capital city of your country? What is the population? Is it an old or modern city?
- 2 Write down two things that you like about your capital and two things that you don't like. Tell the class.

I like walking by the Nile in Cairo, but I don't like travelling by bus. They're too crowded.

WORLD TRAVEL

What's it like?

- 1 Read about Todd Bridges.
- 2 What do you know about Melbourne, Dubai, and Paris? Where are they?
- 3 **T 6.1** Listen to what Todd says about them. Write the adjectives he uses for each city. Compare with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Match the questions and answers.

Do you like Paris?	It's beautiful.
What's Paris like?	Yes, I do.
	It's got lots of old buildings.
	No, I don't.

- 2 Which question in 1 means: *Tell me about Paris.*

▶▶ Grammar Reference 6.1 p135

- 4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the places Todd visited.

What's Melbourne like?

It's ...

It's got ...

There are ...



TODD BRIDGES

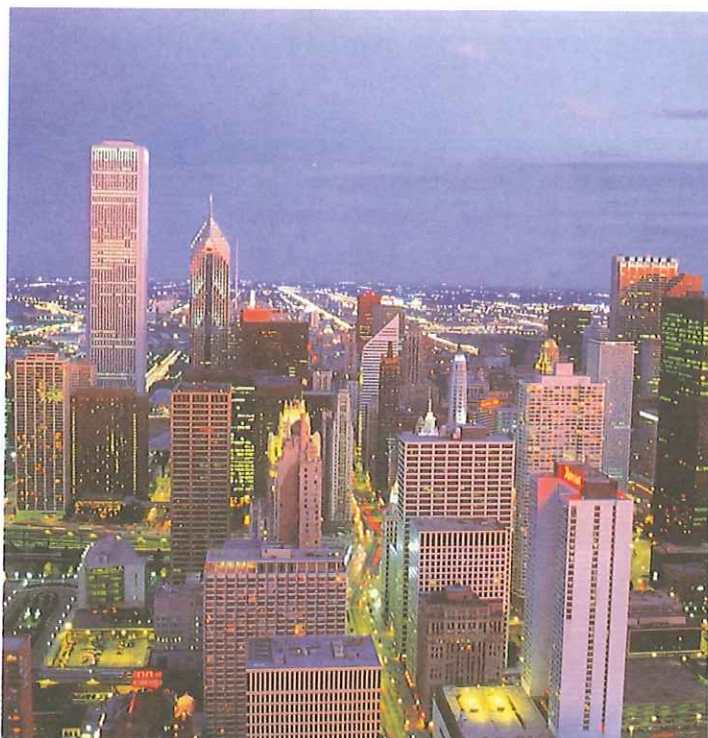


Todd Bridges is only seventeen years old but he is already a successful tennis player. He comes from Chicago, USA, but he travels all over the world playing tennis. Last year he played in tennis championships in Melbourne, Dubai, and Paris.

PRACTICE

What's Chicago like?

- 1 You are asking Todd about Chicago. Complete the questions with *is* or *are* and the correct words from the box.



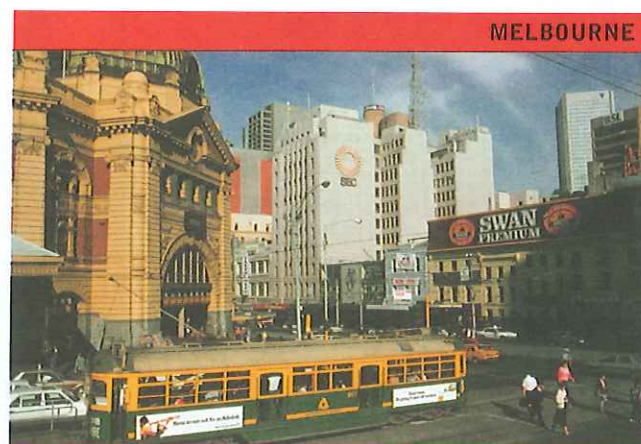
the restaurants the people the night-life the buildings

- 1 **You** What 's the weather like?
Todd Well, Chicago's called 'the windy city' and it really can be windy!
- 2 **You** What _____ like?
Todd They're very interesting. You meet people from all over the world.
- 3 **You** What _____ like?
Todd A lot of them are very, very tall. The Sears Tower is 110 storeys high.
- 4 **You** What _____ like?
Todd They're very good. You can find food from every country in the world.
- 5 **You** What _____ like?
Todd Oh, it's wonderful. There's lots to do in Chicago.
- 2 **T 6.2** Listen and check. Practise with a partner.
- 3 Ask and answer the same questions about the city you are in now.

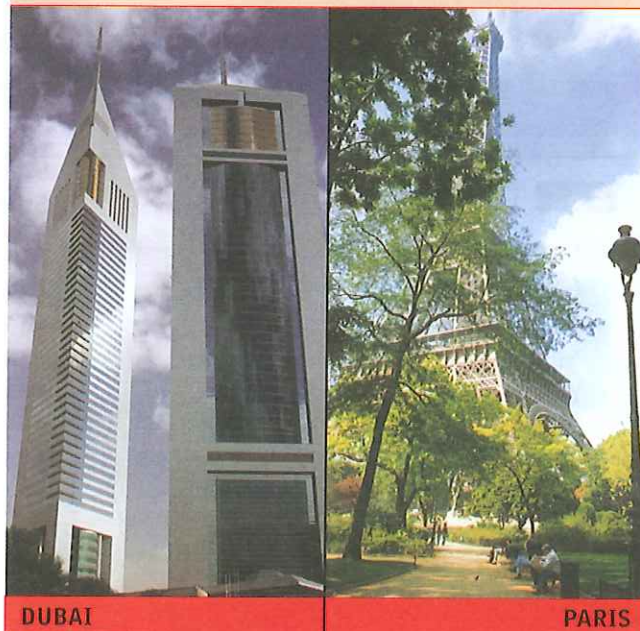
BIG, BIGGER, BIGGEST!

Comparatives and superlatives

- 1 Read the second part of the conversation with Todd. He compares the places he visited last year. Can you complete any of the sentences?



“ Melbourne was interesting, but for me, Paris was _____ interesting _____ Melbourne, and in some ways Dubai was the _____ interesting of all because it was so different _____ any other place I know. It was also the _____, driest, and _____ modern. It was hot in Melbourne but not _____ hot _____ in Dubai. Dubai was _____ hotter! Melbourne is _____ older _____ Dubai but not _____ old _____ Paris. Paris was _____ oldest city I visited, but it has some great modern buildings, too. It was the _____ romantic place. I loved it. ”



T 6.3 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 What are the comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives? What are the rules?

- | | |
|---------|-------------|
| a small | c busy |
| cold | noisy |
| near | dry |
| b big | d beautiful |
| hot | interesting |
| wet | exciting |

2 These adjectives are irregular. What are the comparative and superlative forms?

far good bad

3 Adjectives also combine with *as ... as*.
Melbourne isn't as cosmopolitan as Chicago.

► Grammar Reference 6.2 p135

2 T 6.4 Listen and repeat the sentences.

/hɒtə ðən/

This summer's hotter than last.

/əz hɒt əz/

It wasn't as hot as this last year.

3 Practise these sentences with a partner.

It isn't as cold today as it was yesterday.

But it's colder than it was last week.

I'm not as tall as you, but I'm taller than Anna.

This car's more expensive than John's.

But it isn't as expensive as Anna's.

T 6.5 Listen and check.

4 Learn this poem by heart.

Good, better, best.

Never, never rest

'til your good is better,

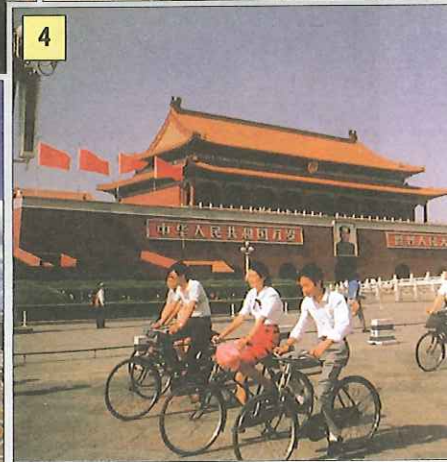
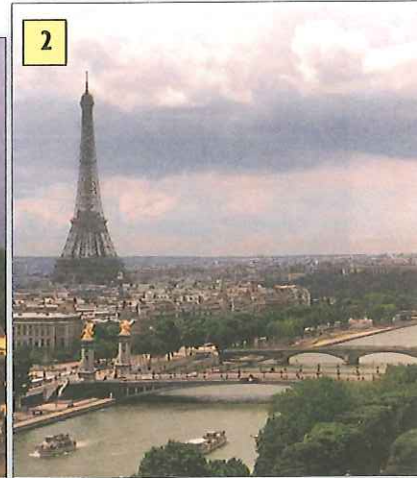
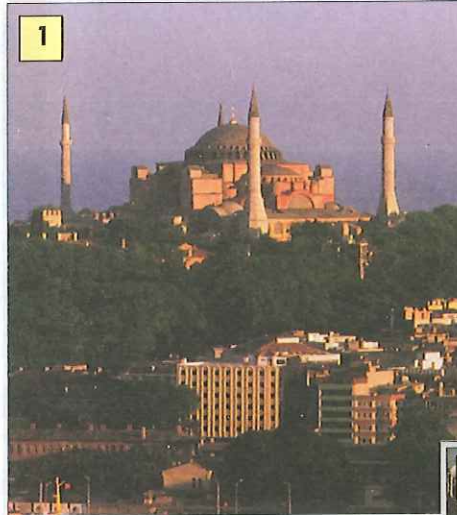
And your better best.

PRACTICE

Comparing four cities

1 Match the cities and the photographs. Which countries are these cities in?

Paris Beijing Istanbul Brasilia



2 Work with a partner. Your teacher will give you some information.

Student A Read about Paris and Beijing.

Student B Read about Istanbul and Brasilia.

Ask and answer these questions to find out about the other two cities.

- How old is it?
- How big is it?
- How many people live there?
- How hot/cold does it get?
- How wet is it?
- How far is it from the sea?

How old is it?

It's very old. It was founded in ...

3 Now compare the four cities.

Paris is bigger than Brasilia.

Beijing is the oldest.

4 Compare some cities in your country.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Living in another country

Conversations

5 Work with a partner and continue these conversations.

- 1 A I moved to a new flat last week.
B Oh, really? What's it like?
A Well, it's bigger than my old one but it isn't as modern, and ...
- 2 A I hear Martin's got a new boss.
B Yeah. He started work last week.
A Oh, really? What's he like?
B Well, he's _____ than his old boss, and ...
- 3 A We have a new teacher.
B Oh, really? What's she like?
A Well, I think she's the _____ teacher we've ever had ...
- 4 A Is that your new car?
B Well, it's second-hand, but it's new to me.
A What's it like?
B Well, it's _____ than my old car ...

Act out a conversation to the class. Whose is the longest?

T 6.6 Listen and compare. Repeat the last lines.

Check it

6 Correct these sentences.

- 1 He's more older than he looks.
- 2 Jessica's as tall than her mother.
- 3 'What does Hong Kong like?' 'It's really exciting!'
- 4 Trains in India are more crowded that in Europe.
- 5 Al-Azhar University in Cairo is oldest university in the world.
- 6 He isn't as intelligent than his sister.
- 7 This is more hard than I expected.
- 8 Who is the most rich man in the world?
- 9 Everything is more cheap in my country.
- 10 Rome was hotter that I expected.



1 What do you know about Sweden? What is the country like? What are the people like? Discuss these statements about Sweden. Do you think they are true (✓) or false (X)?

- 1 In winter there is only one hour of daylight.
- 2 Swedish people look forward to winter.
- 3 The houses are cold.
- 4 The houses are much better insulated than in Britain.
- 5 In parts of Sweden from May to July the sun never sets.
- 6 Londoners work longer hours than the Swedes.
- 7 Swedes always start work early in the morning.
- 8 Country cottages in Sweden are usually very luxurious.
- 9 All houses have a sauna.

2 **T 6.7** You are going to listen to Jane Bland talking to her friend, Fran, about her life in Sweden. Jane comes from London, but three years ago she married a Swede and went to live and work in Stockholm. Listen and check your answers to exercise 1.

3 Compare your country with what you learned about Sweden.
In my country it gets dark at five o'clock in winter, and it's much warmer.

READING AND SPEAKING

A tale of two millionaires

- 1 Do you prefer to spend money or to save it?
- 2 Match the verbs and nouns. Many of them are to do with money.

Verbs	Nouns
buy	a bank account
spoil	poverty
wear	a thief
open	a will
live in	stocks and shares
inherit	a child
make	a leg
arrest	ragged clothes
invest	a lot of money from someone
amputate	a lot of money in something

- 3 You are going to read about two millionaires. One was very mean, the other very generous. First read *quickly* about Milton Petrie. Can you remember any examples of his kindness?
- 4 Now read *quickly* about Hetty Green. Can you remember any examples of her meanness?
- 5 Read one text more carefully, then answer the questions with a partner who read the other text.
 - 1 When were Milton and Hetty born?
 - 2 What were their parents like?
 - 3 How did Milton and Hetty become so wealthy?
 - 4 Who wore ragged clothes?
 - 5 What was the meanest thing Hetty did?
 - 6 Why did Milton like making a lot of money?
 - 7 Who did they marry?
 - 8 When did they die? How old were they?
 - 9 Who left the most money? Who did they leave it to?

What do you think?

Discuss these questions in small groups.

- How were Milton and Hetty's childhoods different?
- How did their childhoods affect them later?
- Why was Milton especially generous to policemen?
- Why did Hetty's daughter build a hospital?
- What was the kindest thing Milton did?
- Who had the happier life? Milton or Hetty?

A tale of

Some millionaires

Milton Petrie

The Most Generous Man in the World

Every morning, billionaire Milton Petrie walked from his New York apartment and bought a newspaper from the ragged old man on the street corner. One morning the man wasn't there. Petrie learned that he was very ill in the city hospital. Immediately he paid his hospital bill and later, when the man died, paid for his funeral.



Milton Petrie

two millionaires

spend it and some save it. Elizabeth Wilson reports on one of each.



The old man was just one of many people that Milton Petrie helped with his money. Whenever he read about personal disasters in his newspaper Petrie sent generous cheques, especially to the families of policemen or firemen injured at work. He also sent cheques to a mother who lost five children in a fire, and a beautiful model, whose face was cut in a knife attack. It cost him millions of dollars, but he still had millions left. He said that he was lucky in business and he wanted to help those less fortunate than himself. 'The nice thing is, the harder I work, the more money I make, and the more people I can help.'

Milton Petrie died in 1994, when he was 92. His will was 120 pages long because he left \$150 million to 383 people. His widow, Carroll, his fourth and last wife, said his generosity was a result of the poverty of his early years. His family were poor but kind-hearted. His father was a Russian immigrant who became a policeman, but he never arrested anyone, he was too kind. He couldn't even give a parking ticket.

Hetty Green

The Richest, Meanest Woman in the World

Henrietta (Hetty) Green was a very spoilt, only child. She was born in Massachusetts, USA, in 1835. Her father was a millionaire businessman. Her mother was often ill, and so from the age of two her father took her with him to work and taught her about stocks and shares. At the age of six she started reading the daily financial newspapers and she opened her own bank account.

Her father died when she was 21 and she inherited \$7.5 million. She went to New York and invested on Wall Street. Hetty saved every penny, eating in the cheapest restaurants for 15 cents. She became one of the richest and most hated women in the world. She was called 'The Witch of Wall Street'. At 33 she married Edward Green, a multi-millionaire, and had two children, Ned and Sylvia.

Hetty's meanness was legendary. She always argued about prices in shops. She walked to the local grocery store to buy broken cookies (biscuits) which were much cheaper, and to get a free bone for her much-loved dog, Dewey. Once she lost a two-cent stamp and spent the night looking for it. She never bought clothes and always wore the same long, ragged black skirt. Worst of all, when her son Ned fell and injured his knee, she refused to pay for a doctor and spent hours looking for free medical help. In the end Ned's leg was amputated.

When she died in 1916 she left her children \$100 million (worth \$9.3 billion today). Her daughter built a hospital with her money.



VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Synonyms

- 1 We often use synonyms in conversation because we don't want to repeat words.



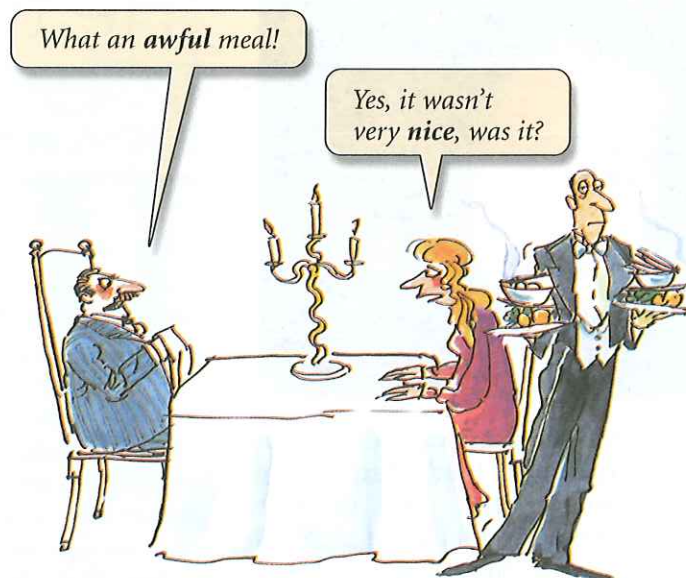
Complete the conversations, using an adjective of similar meaning from the box.

fed up generous brilliant messy modern wealthy

- 1 'Mary's family is very rich.'
'Well, I knew her uncle was very _____.'
 - 2 'Look at all these new buildings!'
'Yes. Paris is much more _____ than I expected.'
 - 3 'Wasn't that film wonderful!'
'Yes, it was _____.'
 - 4 'George doesn't earn much money, but he's so kind.'
'He is, isn't he? He's one of the most _____ people I know.'
 - 5 'Ann's bedroom's really untidy again!'
'Is it? I told her it was _____ yesterday, and she promised to clean it.'
 - 6 'I'm bored with this lesson!'
'I know, I'm really _____ with it, too!'
- 2 **T 6.8** Listen and check. Listen again, paying particular attention to the stress and intonation. Practise the conversations with a partner.

Antonyms

- 3 We can also use antonyms in conversation to avoid repeating words.



Match the following adjectives with their *two* opposites in exercise 1.

interested	<u>bored</u>	<u>fed up</u>
horrible	_____	_____
mean	_____	_____
old	_____	_____
poor	_____	_____
tidy	_____	_____

- 4 Sometimes it is more polite to use *not very* and an opposite adjective.
- Tom's so short. Well, he's **not very tall**.
- He always wears such dirty clothes. They certainly **aren't very clean**.

Reply to these sentences. Be more polite.

- 1 London's such an expensive city.
 - 2 Paul and Sue are so mean.
 - 3 Their house is always so messy.
 - 4 Their children are so noisy.
 - 5 John looks so miserable.
 - 6 His sister's so stupid.
- 5 **T 6.9** Listen and check. Pay particular attention to the stress and intonation. Practise the conversations with your partner.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions

1 Look at the map of Chesswood and find these things:

- a farm • a wood • a pond • a path • a hill • a river • a bridge • a gate



2 Read these descriptions and add the places to the map.

- 1 The hotel is **opposite** the station car park.
- 2 The bank is **on the corner of** Lower Road and Hill Road. It is **next to** the baker's.
- 3 The supermarket is **between** the pharmacy and the greengrocer's.
- 4 There is a bus stop **in front of** the flower shop in Station Road.
- 5 The museum is in Station Road, **opposite** the flower shop **near** the railway bridge.
- 6 The bookshop is in Silver Street, **behind** the school.

3 Ask and answer questions about the places on the map. Use the prepositions from exercise 2.

Where's the library?

It's on the corner of Station Road and Green Street, opposite the flower shop.

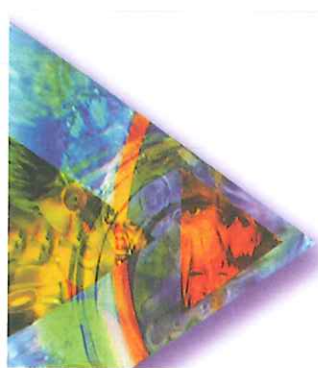
4 Complete the directions from Chesswood farm to the school with the prepositions in the box. Look at the map to help you.

up down over past through out of (x2) across (x2)

You go _____ the path, _____ the pond, _____ the bridge, and _____ the gate. Then you go _____ the road and take the path _____ the wood. When you come _____ the wood you walk _____ the path and go _____ the road. It takes five minutes.

T 6.10 Listen and check.

5 Give your partner directions to get to your house from your school.



7

Fame

Present Perfect • *for, since* • Adverbs, word pairs • Short answers

STARTER



What is the Past Simple and the past participle of these verbs?

write be sell win have read do eat know break

FAMOUS WRITERS

Present Perfect and Past Simple

- 1 Look at the photographs of two well-known English writers. How do you think they are related?

Complete the sentences with *He* or *She*.

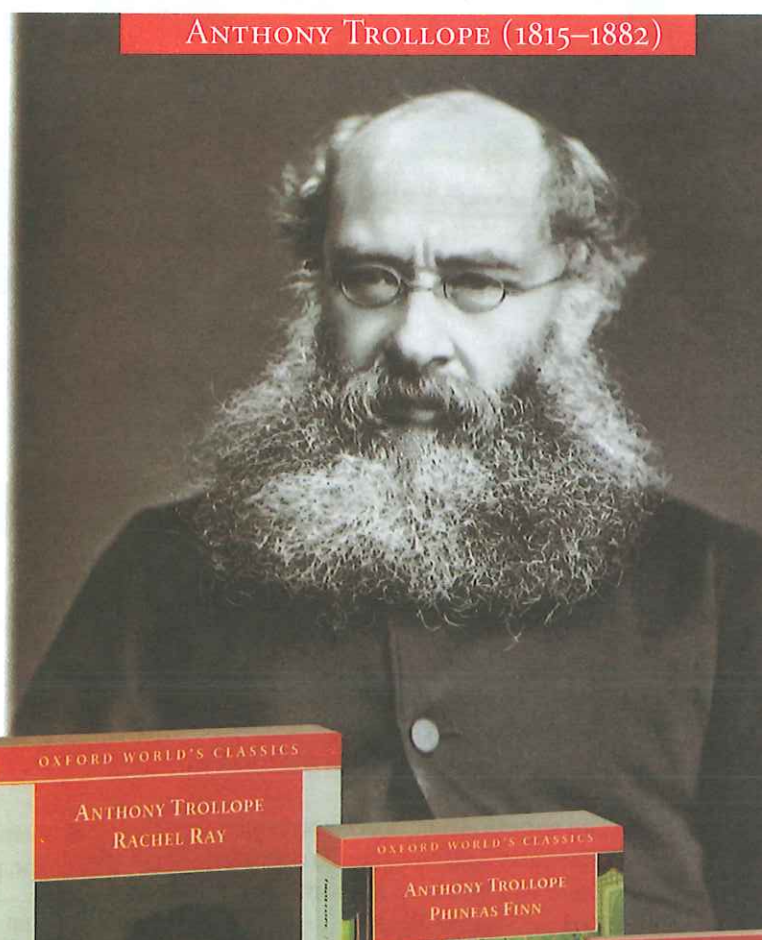
- 1 _____ wrote novels about Victorian life. _____ writes novels about modern people and their relationships.
- 2 _____ wrote 47 novels, travel books, biographies, and short stories. _____ has written over twenty novels. _____ started writing in her thirties.
- 3 _____ has lived in the west of England for forty years. _____ lived in Ireland for eighteen years.
- 4 _____ has been married twice, and has two daughters. _____ married for the first time in 1966. _____ was married and had two sons.

T 7.1 Listen and check. Practise the sentences.

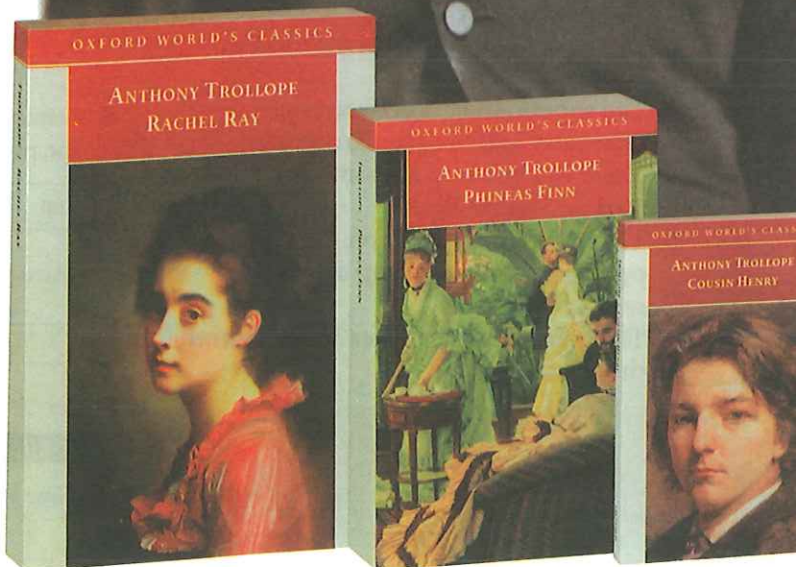
GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Find examples of the Past Simple in sentences 1–4. Find examples of the Present Perfect.
- 2 Complete the rule.
We make the Present Perfect with the auxiliary verb _____ + the _____.
- 3 Why are different tenses used in these sentences?
Anthony Trollope **wrote** forty-seven novels.
Joanna Trollope **has written** twenty novels.

▶ Grammar Reference 7.1 and 7.2 p136



ANTHONY TROLLOPE (1815–1882)



PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Choose the correct verb form.

- 1 *Have you ever been* / *Did you ever go* to a pop concert?
- 2 I *saw* / *have seen* The Flash last week.
- 3 I love music. I *like* / *have liked* it all my life.
- 4 The Flash's concert *was* / *has been* fantastic.
- 5 I *have bought* / *bought* all their records since then.
- 6 The Flash *have been* / *are* together for over fifteen years.

Find someone who ...

- 2 Your teacher will give you a card which begins *Find someone who ...*

Find someone who has been to another country.

Decide on the question, beginning *Have you ever ... ?* Stand up, and ask everyone in the class.

Ask questions to find out more.

Where did you go?

What were the people like?

What did you do there?

Did you enjoy it?

How long were you there?

- 3 Report back to the class.

Hatem has been to ...

2 Put the verbs in the Present Perfect or Past Simple.

- 1 Anthony Trollope _____ (travel) to South Africa, Australia, Egypt, and the West Indies. Joanna Trollope _____ (travel) to many parts of the world.
- 2 She _____ (win) many awards, and several of her stories _____ (appear) on TV.
- 3 Her first book _____ (come) out in 1980. Since then, she _____ (sell) more than 5 million copies.
- 4 She _____ (go) to school in the south of England, and _____ (study) English at Oxford University, but she _____ (live) in the country for most of her life.
- 5 She writes her books by hand. She _____ (have) the same pen since 1995.

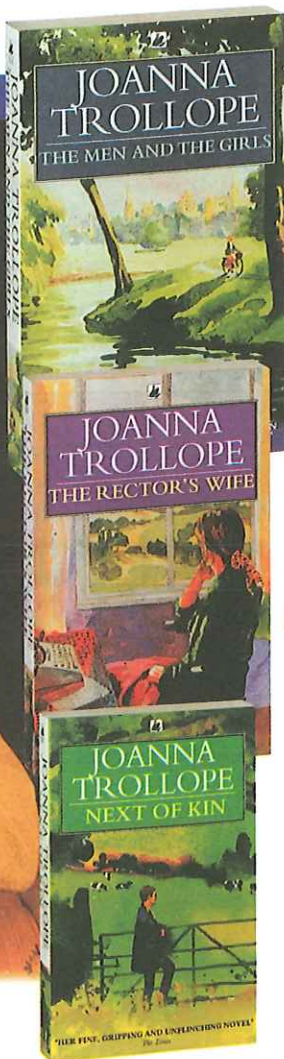
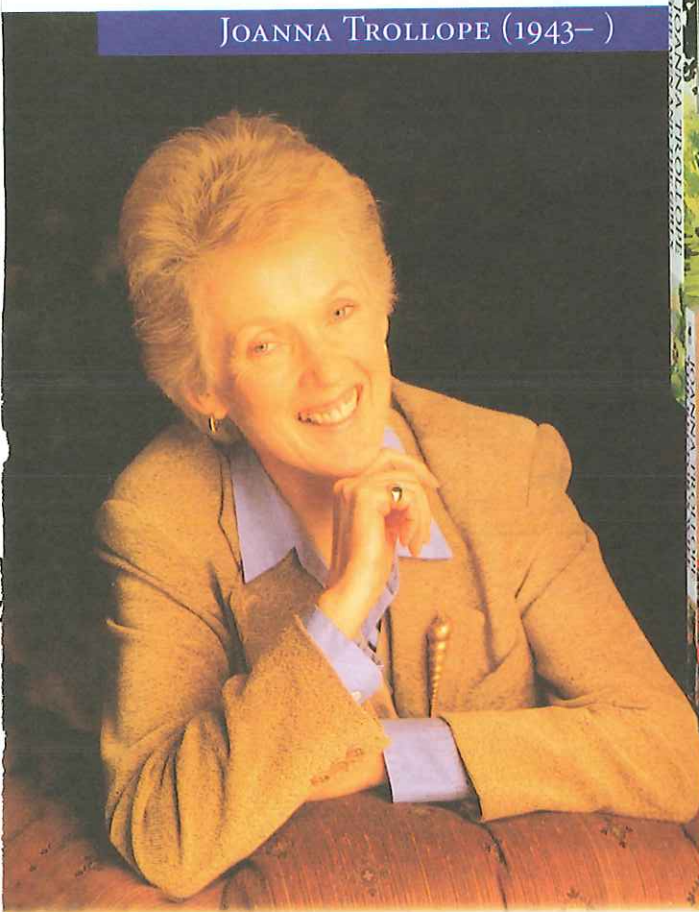
T 7.2 Listen and check.

- 3 Here are the answers to some questions about Joanna. What are the questions?

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 For forty years. | 5 In 1980. |
| 2 English. (... <i>study</i> ... ?) | 6 Twice. (<i>How many times</i> ... ?) |
| 3 More than twenty. | 7 Yes, two daughters. (... <i>children</i> ?) |
| 4 Over five million. | 8 Since 1995. |

T 7.3 Listen and check.

JOANNA TROLLOPE (1943-)



for and since

4 Complete the time expressions with *for* or *since*.

- | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| 1 _____ a year | 4 _____ nine o'clock | 7 _____ months |
| 2 _____ half an hour | 5 _____ I was a student | 8 _____ 1999 |
| 3 _____ August | 6 _____ a couple of days | |

5 Match a line in **A** and **B** and a sentence in **C**. There is more than one answer.

A	B	C
1 I've known my best friend	from 1988 to 1996.	It's not bad. I quite like it.
2 I last went to the cinema	for an hour.	I went camping with some friends.
3 I've had this watch	two weeks ago.	We met when we were 10.
4 We've used this book	since 1985.	I really need a cup of coffee.
5 We lived in our old flat	since the beginning of term.	My dad gave it to me for my birthday.
6 We haven't had a break	for years.	We moved because we needed somewhere bigger.
7 I last had a holiday	for three years.	The film was rubbish.
8 This building has been a school	in 1999.	Before that it was an office.

T 7.4 Listen and check. Make similar sentences about you.

Asking questions

6 Complete the conversation.

What tenses are the three questions?

A Where _____ live, Olga?

B In a flat near the park.

A How long _____ there?

B For three years.

A And why _____ move?

B We wanted to live in a nicer area.

T 7.5 Listen and check. Practise the conversation with a partner.

7 Make more conversations, using the same tenses.

1 A What ... do? B I work ... A How long ... ? B For ... A What ... do before that? B I worked ...	2 A ... got a car? B Yes, I ... A How long ... ? B Since ... A How much ... pay for it? B It was ...	3 A ... know Omar? B Yes, I ... A How long ... ? B For ... A Where ... meet him? B We ...
---	---	--

8 With a partner, ask and answer questions beginning *How long ... ?*

How long have you lived / worked / known / had ... ?

Then get some more information.

Why did you move?

What did you do before ... ?

Where did you meet ... ?

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

The band *Style*

- 1 What kinds of music do you like? If you could meet your favourite bands or singers, what would you ask them?
- 2 **T 7.6** Listen to an interview with two musicians, Suzie and Guy, from the band *Style*. Put **S** or **G** in columns 1 and 2. Put **✓** or **X** in column 3.

1 What do they do in the band?	2 Bands they have played with	3 Places they have visited
☐ guitar ☐ keyboards ☐ drums ☐ harmonica ☐ vocalist	☐ UB40 ☐ Lionel Richie ☐ Phil Collins ☐ Genesis ☐ Happy Mondays ☐ Bon Jovi ☐ Ace	☐ Holland ☐ Hungary ☐ America ☐ Sweden ☐ Japan ☐ Italy ☐ Australia

Which bands have they played with? Which countries have they been to?

- 3 Answer the questions.
- Why do Suzie and Guy feel tired?
 - What have they done this year?
 - Have they had a good time?
 - What was special about the song *Mean Street*?
 - How many years have they been together?
 - Where do they want to go?
 - What jobs has Guy had? What about Suzie? (*She's worked ...*)

Language work

- 4 Make sentences about Suzie and Guy with the phrases in the boxes.

A	B
in April in 1995 two years ago when she left college	since 1997 about twenty-five fifteen years since he was 17

What tense are the verbs in the sentences from **A**?
What about **B**?

- 5 Ask and answer the questions.
- What/do/before forming *Style*?
 - How/meet each other?
 - ... be/to America?
 - How many records/make?

Roleplay

- 6 Some of you are musicians or singers. Others are journalists who are going to interview them. Your teacher will give you some ideas. When you are ready, have the interview.

Guy

Suzie

READING

Celebrity interview

- Which celebrities are in the news at the moment? Why are they in the news? What have they done?
- Look at the article from *Hi! Magazine*. Who is the couple in the interview? Are there magazines like this in your country? What sort of stories do they have?
- Read the article quickly and put these questions in the right place.

- Have there ever been times when you have thought 'This relationship isn't working'?
- Terry, footballers are usually hard, but you seem very sensitive. Why is this?
- You're both terribly busy in your separate careers. How do you find time to be together?
- How did you two meet?
- How do you find being superstars?

- Read the article again and answer the questions.
 - Why are they famous?
 - They are both successful in their careers. What have they done?
 - In what ways are they normal people? What is not normal about their lives?
 - What is their attitude to newspapers and 'other people'?
 - Why do some people want them to split up?
 - In what way is Terry unusual for a footballer?
- Work in groups of three. Read the text aloud.

Language work

- Choose the correct tense.
 - Donna and Terry *are / have been / were* married for two years.
 - They *like / have liked / liked* watching TV on Saturday night.
 - They *meet / have met / met* after a football match.
 - They *have lived / live / lived* in their new home since April.
 - Terry *plays / has played / played* for England over thirty times.

Project

- Buy a magazine like *Hi!* and find an interview with a famous person. Bring it into class and tell the class about it.

THE POP STAR AND THE FOOTBALLER

DONNA & TERRY FLYNN

TALK TO *Hi!* MAGAZINE ABOUT THEIR LIVES

This is the most famous married couple in the country. She is the pop star who has had six number one records – more than any other single artist. He has scored fifty goals for Manchester United, and has played for England over thirty times. Together they earn about £20 million a year. They invited *Hi! Magazine* into their luxurious home.

?

Donna: A lot of the time since we've been together, one of us has been away. We really have to try hard to be together. We have both flown all over the world just to spend a few hours together.

Terry: Obviously, people say, 'Oh, you've got all this money, what are you going to spend it on?' But the best thing is that money buys us the freedom to be together.

?

Donna: It hasn't changed us. We are still the same people. Newspapers have told terrible stories about us, but it's all lies.

Terry: Our perfect Saturday night is sitting in front of the telly with a take-away. Our favourite programmes are *Blind Date* and *Friends*. You won't find photos of us coming out of pubs and clubs drunk, having spent the night with a whole load of famous people.



Donna says: 'I'm the happiest I've ever been.'

?

Donna: I went to one of his matches because I liked him and I wanted to meet him. It's funny, because I'm not really interested in football, so when I met him after the match, I didn't know what to say to him.

Terry: I'm very shy. We just looked at each other from opposite sides of the room. But I said to my mate, 'She's the one for me. I'm going to marry her one day.' Fortunately, she came to another game, and we started talking then.

?

Donna: Not really. Naturally, it's hard when you're away from each other, but in a way this has made us stronger.

▷



Donna and Terry have been married for just over two years. They have lived in their house since April. She says: 'He has good taste – but not as good as mine!'

A lot of people would love to see us split up. People can be very unkind ...

Terry: Of course you have to be prepared to give and take in any relationship. There's a trust between us, and as long as that's there, we will last.

?

Terry: I think that when you meet the person that you want to spend the rest of your life with, you change. You become a softer person.

Donna: We mean the world to each other. Neither of us will do anything to spoil it.

HI!



VOCABULARY

Adverbs

- 1 Many adverbs end in *-ly*.

slowly carefully usually

Find some more examples in the text on p58–9.

- 2 There are also many adverbs that don't end in *-ly*. Find these examples in the text.

together hard still just of course

- 3 Complete the sentences with one of these adverbs.

still
nearly
only
of course
together



- Bill and I work _____. We've been in the same office for four years.
- I called Tom at 10.00 in the morning, but he was _____ in bed.
- 'Do you like children?' '_____ I do. I adore them.'
- Kate is very fussy about food. She _____ eats pasta and crisps.
- She was very ill and _____ died, but fortunately, she got better.

- 4 Complete the sentences with one of these adverbs.

at last exactly too especially just

- I like all Russian novelists, _____ Tolstoy.
- 'I hate ironing.' 'Me, _____. It's so boring.'
- 'Are you telling me that we have no money?' '_____ . Not a penny.'
- I met her on December 30, _____ before New Year.
- _____ I have finished this exercise. Thank goodness! It was so boring.

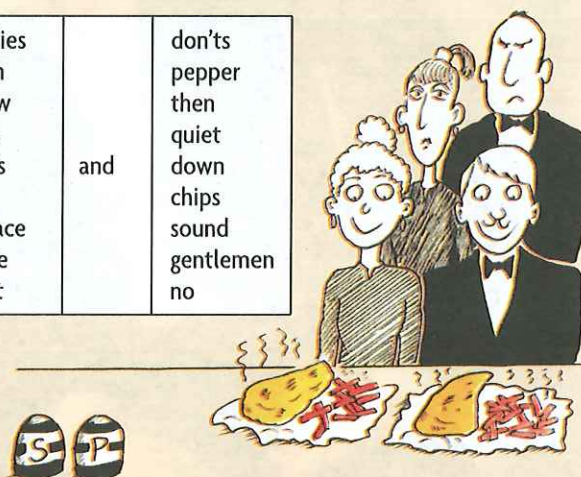
Word pairs

- 1 There are many idiomatic expressions which consist of two words joined by *and*. Here is an example from the text on p59.

'Of course you have to be prepared to give and take in any relationship.'

- 2 Match the words.

ladies		don'ts
fish		pepper
now		then
yes	and	quiet
do's		down
up		chips
peace		sound
safe		gentlemen
salt		no



- 3 Complete the sentences with one of the expressions.

- 'Do you still play tennis?' 'Not regularly. Just _____, when I have time.'
- This is a pretty relaxed place to work. There aren't many _____.
- Here you are at last! I've been so worried! Thank goodness you've arrived _____.
- 'Do you like your new job?' '_____. The money's OK, but I don't like the people.'
- Sometimes there are too many people in the house. I go into the garden for a bit of _____.
- Good evening, _____. It gives me great pleasure to talk to you all tonight.
- 'How's your Gran?' '_____. There are good days, and then not such good days.'
- 'Here's supper. Careful! It's hot.' '_____! Yummy!'

T 7.7 Close your books. Listen to the beginnings of the conversations and complete them.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Short answers

- 1 **T 7.8** Listen to the conversations. What's the difference between them?
Which sounds more polite?

! 1 When we answer *Yes/No* questions, we often repeat a subject and the auxiliary verb. *Yes* or *No* on its own sounds impolite. Complete these short answers.

Do you like cooking? Yes, I do .
Is it raining? No, it isn't .
Have you been to France? Yes, I have .
Are you good at chess? No, I am not .
Can you speak German? Yes, I can .

2 It also helps a conversation if you can add more information.

Do you like cooking? Yes, I do, actually, especially Thai food.

- 2 Complete the short answers. Continue with a line from the speech bubbles.

I'm sorry. I haven't got a penny on me.

Why? What are you doing?

I prefer classical music.

It was a great game.

I went there last weekend with Frank.

But they give me a lot of freedom, too.

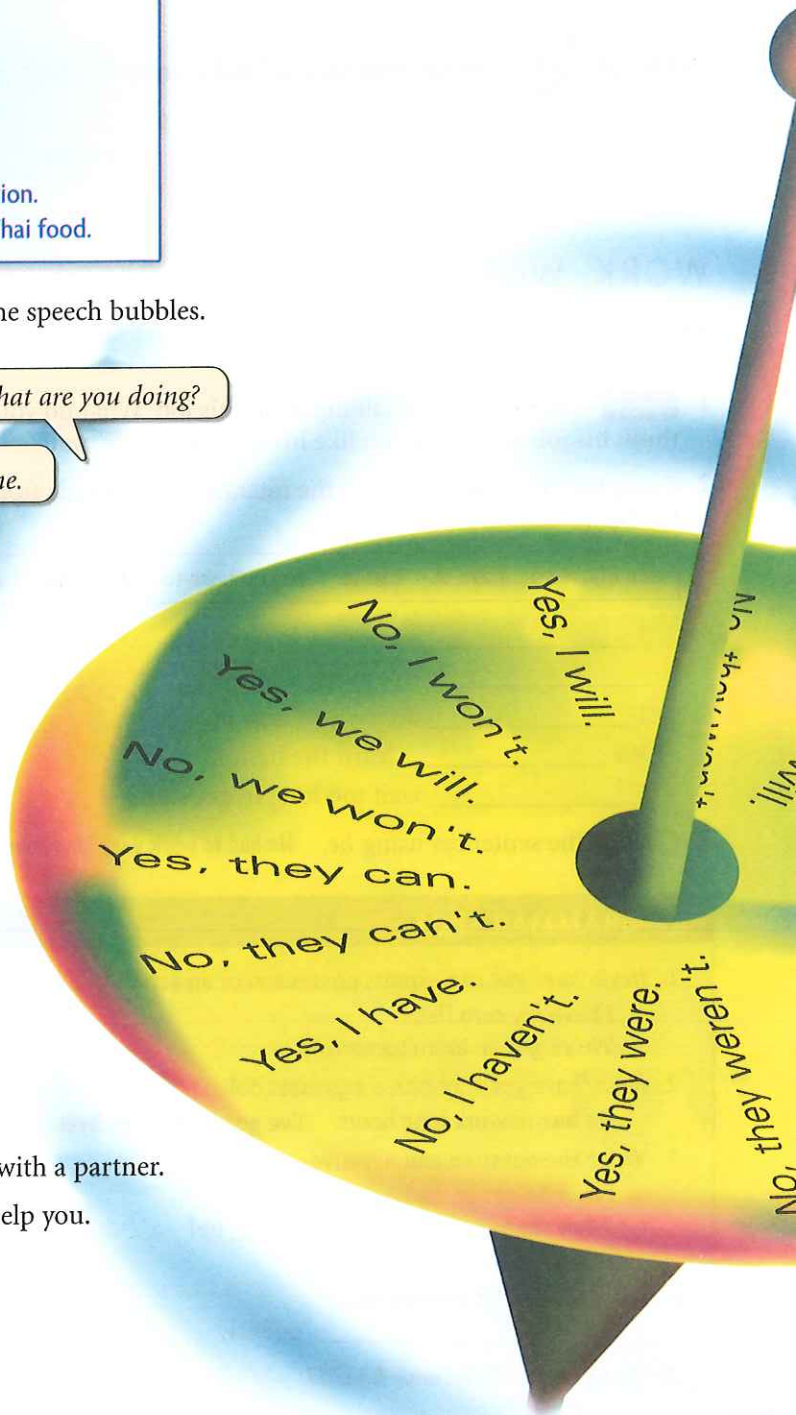
- 1 A Do you like jazz?
B No, _____ .
- 2 A Did you see the football last night?
B Yes, _____ .
- 3 A Have you got change for a pound?
B No, _____ .
- 4 A Have you tried the new pizza place?
B Yes, _____ .
- 5 A Are your parents quite strict?
B Yes, I suppose _____ .
- 6 A Are you doing anything this evening?
B No, _____ .

Choose one or two of the conversations. Continue them with a partner.

- 3 Think of questions to ask each other. Use these ideas to help you.

- Do you ... like/play/go/have ... ?
- Can you ... ride/speak/run/use ... ?
- Did you ... go/have/win/do ... last night?
- Have you ever ... been/seen/tried/had ... ?
- Are you ... going to/good at/afraid of ... ?
- Have you got ... a car/a CD player/a cat ... ?

- 4 Stand up and ask your questions. Use short answers in your replies.



8 Do's and don'ts

have (got) to • should/must • Words that go together • At the doctor's

STARTER

What's true for you? Make sentences about your life.

I have to ... **I don't have to ...**

- get up early every morning
- pay bills
- go to school
- work at the weekend
- do the housework

WORK, WORK

have (got) to

- 1 **T 8.1** Listen to Steven talking about his job. What do you think his job is? Would you like his job? Why/Why not?
- 2 Complete the sentences from the interview with words from the box.

don't have to have to had to Do you have to didn't have to

I _____ work very long hours.

_____ work at the weekend?

I _____ do the washing-up.

We _____ learn the basics.

I _____ wait too long to get a job.

- 3 Change the sentences using *he*. **He has to work very long hours.**

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 *have/have got* can express possession or an action.
I **have** my own flat.
We've **got** an exam tomorrow.
- 2 *have/have got + infinitive* expresses obligation.
He **has to** work long hours. I've **got to** go now. Bye!
- 3 Write the question and negative.
I have to get up early.
What time _____ you _____ up?
I _____ up early.
Put the sentence in the past.
Yesterday I _____ up early.

►► Grammar Reference 8.1 p137



WHAT'S MY JOB?
STEVEN BARNES

- 4 What are some of the other things Steven has to do?

PRACTICE

Pronunciation

1 **T 8.2** Listen to these sentences. What are the different pronunciations of *have/has/had*?

- 1 ☐ I **have** a good job. ☐ I **have** to work hard.
- 2 ☐ He **has** a nice car. ☐ She **has** to get up early.
- 3 ☐ I **had** a good time. ☐ I **had** to take exams.

Put a–f in front of the sentences according to the pronunciation below.

- a /hæz/ b /hæv/ c /hæd/
d /hæf/ e /hæs/ f /hæt/

T 8.2 Listen again and repeat.



Jobs

2 Work with a partner. Choose one of the jobs from the box, but don't tell your partner. Ask and answer *Yes/No* questions to find out what the job is.

shop assistant receptionist taxi-driver artist architect lawyer
ambulance driver police officer nurse soldier decorator detective
vet mechanic dentist housewife farmer plumber firefighter

Do you ... ?

- work inside
- earn a lot of money
- work regular hours

Do you have to ... ?

- wear a uniform
- use your hands
- answer the phone

Do you work inside?

Yes, I do./No, I don't.

3 Which of the jobs *wouldn't* you like to do? Why?

I wouldn't like to be a farmer because they have to work outside all year.

Talking about you

4 In groups, discuss the questions. If you live at home with your parents, use the present tense. If you've left home, use the past tense.

- 1 What

do
did

 you have to do to help in the house? What about your brothers and sisters?
- 2 Can

you stay out as long as you
want?
wanted?

 Or

do
did

 you have to be home by a certain time?
- 3 Do

you always have to tell your parents where you
are
were

 going?
- 4 How strict

are
were

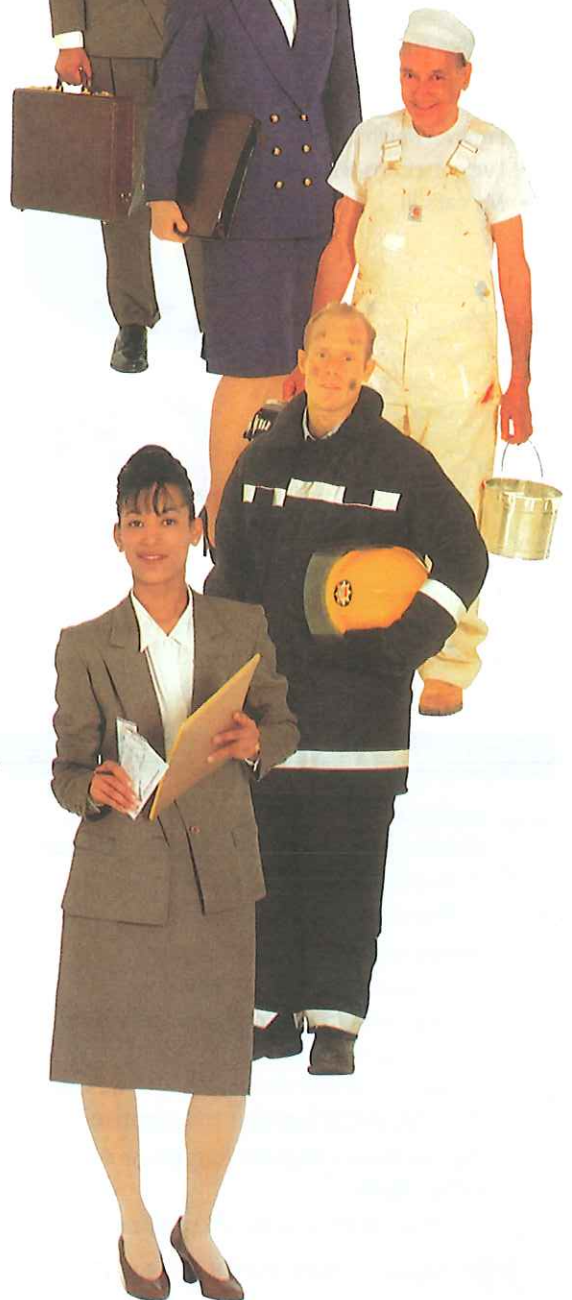
 your parents? What

do
did

 they let you do?
- 5 What

do
did

 you argue about?



PROBLEMS, PROBLEMS

should, must

1 Match the problems and suggestions on the right. What advice would *you* give?

2 **T 8.3** Listen and complete the advice. Use the words from the box.

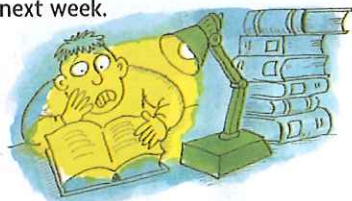
shouldn't	should
must	don't think you should

- I think you _____ talk to your boss.
- You _____ drink coffee at night.
- I _____ go on that boat trip next week.
- You _____ go to the dentist.

Practise the conversations with a partner.

3 Give advice to your friends.

- I'm overweight.
- I've got exams next week.
- My cat's ill.



- I'm always arguing with my parents.
- It's my parents' wedding anniversary soon.
- My car's making a funny noise.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- Which sentence expresses a suggestion?
Which sentence expresses strong obligation?
You **should** go on a diet.
You **must** go to the doctor's.
- Should** and **must** are modal verbs.
He **must** be careful.
You **shouldn't** drive when you're tired.
What **should** she do?
Do we add *-s* with *he/she/it*? Do we use *do/does* in the question and negative?
- We can make a negative suggestion with *I don't think ...*
I don't think you **should** smoke so much.

►► Grammar Reference 8.2–8.4 p137

Problems

I'm working 16 hours a day.

I can't sleep.

I get seasick very easily.

I've had a terrible toothache for weeks.



Suggestions

Don't drink coffee at night.

Go to the dentist.

Don't go on that boat trip next week.

Talk to your boss.



PRACTICE

Grammar

1 Make sentences from the chart.

If you want to ...		
learn English, do well in life, keep fit,	you have to you don't have to you should you shouldn't	work hard. do some sport. learn the grammar. go to university. buy a dictionary. smoke. believe in yourself. speak your language in class.

A trip to your country

2 Someone is coming to stay in your country for six months. What advice can you give?

You **should** bring warm clothes.

You **have to** have a passport.

You **don't have to** get a visa.

You **must** try our local speciality.

Include advice about money, documents, clothes, health, accommodation, and food.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Holidays in January

- 1 Do many people in your country go on holiday in winter? Where do they go? Where would you like to go for a winter holiday? Write a sentence and read it to the class.

I'd like to go to ... because ...

- 2 **T 8.4** Listen to three people giving advice about visiting their country in the month of January. Complete the chart. Compare your answers with a partner.

	Weather and clothes	Things to do, places to go	Food and drink
Silvia			
Fatima			
Karl			

- 3 Answer the questions.

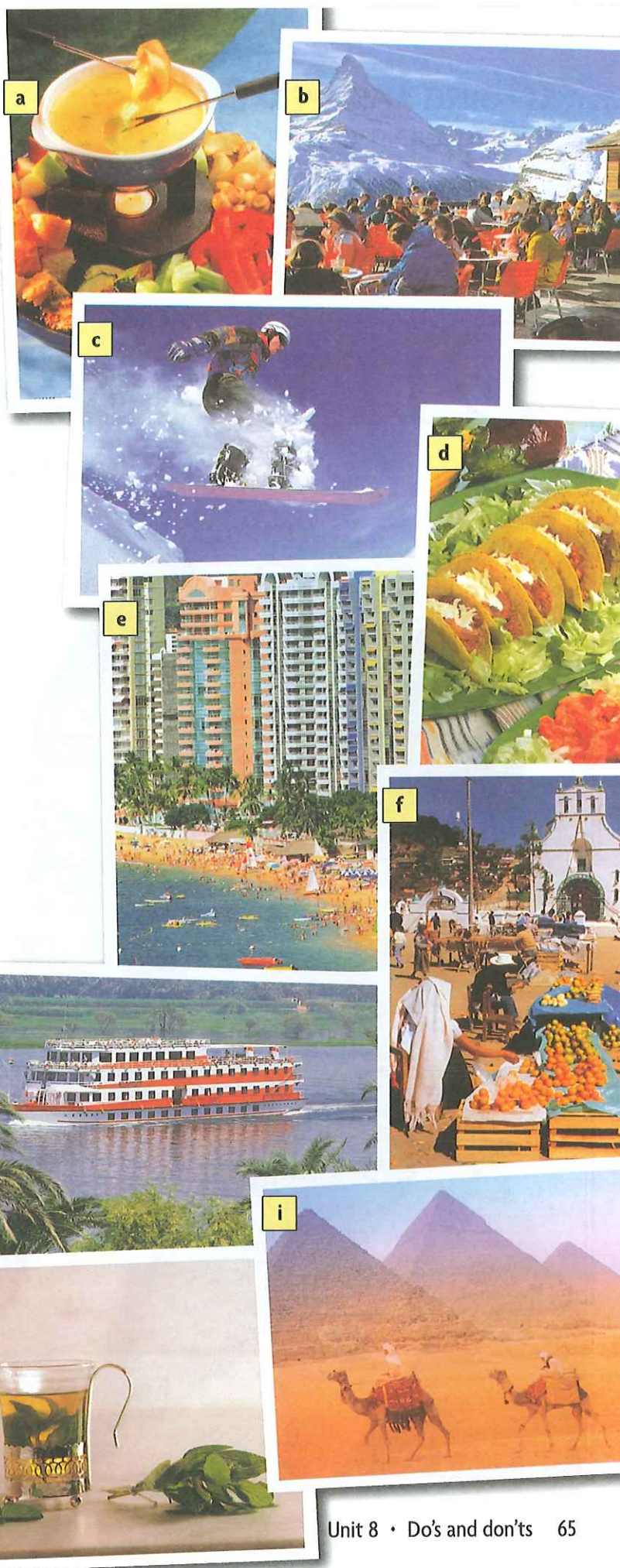
- Which countries are they talking about? How do you know?
- Look at the photographs. Which country do they go with?
- Who talked about sport? Which sport?
- Who talked about money? What did he/she say?
- Who suggested going on a boat trip? Where?
- Which of these countries would you like to visit in January? Why?

Speaking

- 4 Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- weather / is / like / in / what / the / January?
- take / clothes / what / should / I?
- can / things / sort / of / what / do / I?
- special / any / there / places / are / that / should / visit / I?
- food / you / recommend / do / what?

- 5 Work with someone from a different country, or choose another country you know. Ask and answer the questions.



READING AND SPEAKING

Problem page

1 These problems come from a newspaper column where people write in with a problem, and other members of the public give their advice. Read the problems. What advice would you give?

2 Match the readers' letters to these problems. There are two for each problem.

DILEMMAS

with Vanessa Goodman



THIS WEEK'S PROBLEMS

Do I have to act my age?

Polly is 47. Her husband has died and her children have left home. She is very successful in her career, and has a lot of friends, but she isn't satisfied. She longs to change her life. She wants to live abroad, paint, and write poetry, but her friends tell her she should stop being silly and act her age.

a ☐ ☐

Must I be a slave to my mobile?

Jason's company has bought him a mobile phone. They want him to keep it on all the time, so that they can contact him anywhere, anytime. He dislikes the idea of always being available, and he hates the way people use mobiles to have private conversations in public.

b ☐ ☐

Should I throw my son out?

Sarah's 24-year-old son lives at home, stays in bed till late, and watches TV all day. He's clever, but he dropped out of school. He's never had a job. His father wants to throw him out, but Sarah worries that he has some very unsuitable friends and could end up in trouble.

c ☐ ☐

READERS' ADVICE

- 1 Children always need the support of their parents, whether they're four or 24. I think you should pay for him to get some qualifications, and when he's ready, _____ to find somewhere to live. Meanwhile, _____ him all the love that he needs.

Jenny Torr
Brighton

- 2 I decided to give it all up and change my life dramatically three years ago. Since then, _____ the most exciting three years of my life. It can be scary, but if you don't do it, you won't know what you've missed. I don't think _____. Go for it.

Mike Garfield
Manchester

- 3 He's using you. I think _____. It's time for him to go. Twenty-four is too old to be living with his parents. He's got to take responsibility for himself. And _____ about his unsuitable friends. Sometimes you have to be cruel to be kind.

Tony Palmer
Harrow

- 4 Why _____ it? He isn't their slave, they don't own him. And I also can't stand the way people use their mobiles in restaurants, on trains and buses. They think that the people around them are invisible and can't hear. _____.

Jane Sands
London

- 5 I think _____ before she gives up her job and goes to live abroad. Does she think that the sun will always shine? If there is something in her life that makes her unhappy now, this will follow her. She should take her time _____.

Nigella Lawnes
Bristol

- 6 _____ ! He should have a word with his company and come to an arrangement with them. Why can't he turn it off sometimes? Mobile phones are great, and if he's got one for free, _____. They are one of the best inventions ever.

Pete Hardcastle
Birmingham

- 3 Where do these lines go? Put a letter in the gaps.

- a ... you should tell him to leave home.
- b ... she should be very careful ...
- c ... you should help him ...
- d ... you should worry.
- e He must keep it!
- f ... before making a decision.
- g It is so rude.
- h ... he's very lucky.
- i I have had...
- j ... you must talk to him ...
- k ... you've got to give ...
- l ... should he accept ...

T 8.5 Listen and check.

- 4 Which letter writer ... ?

- suggests waiting
- thinks love is the answer
- has been adventurous
- thinks that employers shouldn't exploit their employees
- loves mobile phones
- suggests being tough

The readers make very different suggestions. Who do you agree with?

What do you think?

- How old are children when they leave home in your country?
- What do you think of people who use mobile phones in public?
- Do you think older people should act their age? Why/Why not?
- 'You have to be cruel to be kind'. Can you think of an example?

Roleplay

With a partner, choose a situation and roleplay the conversation.

- Polly and one of her friends
- Jason and his boss
- Sarah and her husband

Group work

In groups, write a letter to a problem page.

Exchange your letters and write a reply. Try to express sympathy with the problem and give some explanation, as well as practical advice.

VOCABULARY

Words that go together

- 1 Many verbs and nouns go together.

tell a story leave home

Look at the chart on the right. Match a verb with a complement. They all appear in the letters and problems on p66–67.

Look at the letters again and check your answers.

- 2 Close your books. Try to remember the sentences that include the phrases from the box.
- 3 Two nouns can go together. There are no rules about spelling.

post office headache horse-race

The stress is usually on the first word.

Match the nouns to make new words.

alarm	cream
car	glasses
traffic	table
credit	coat
ice	lights
sun	card
time	park
rain	clock

hair	case
sun	drier
ear	quake
sign	post
book	ring
rush	lighter
cigarette	set
earth	hour

T 8.6 Listen and check.

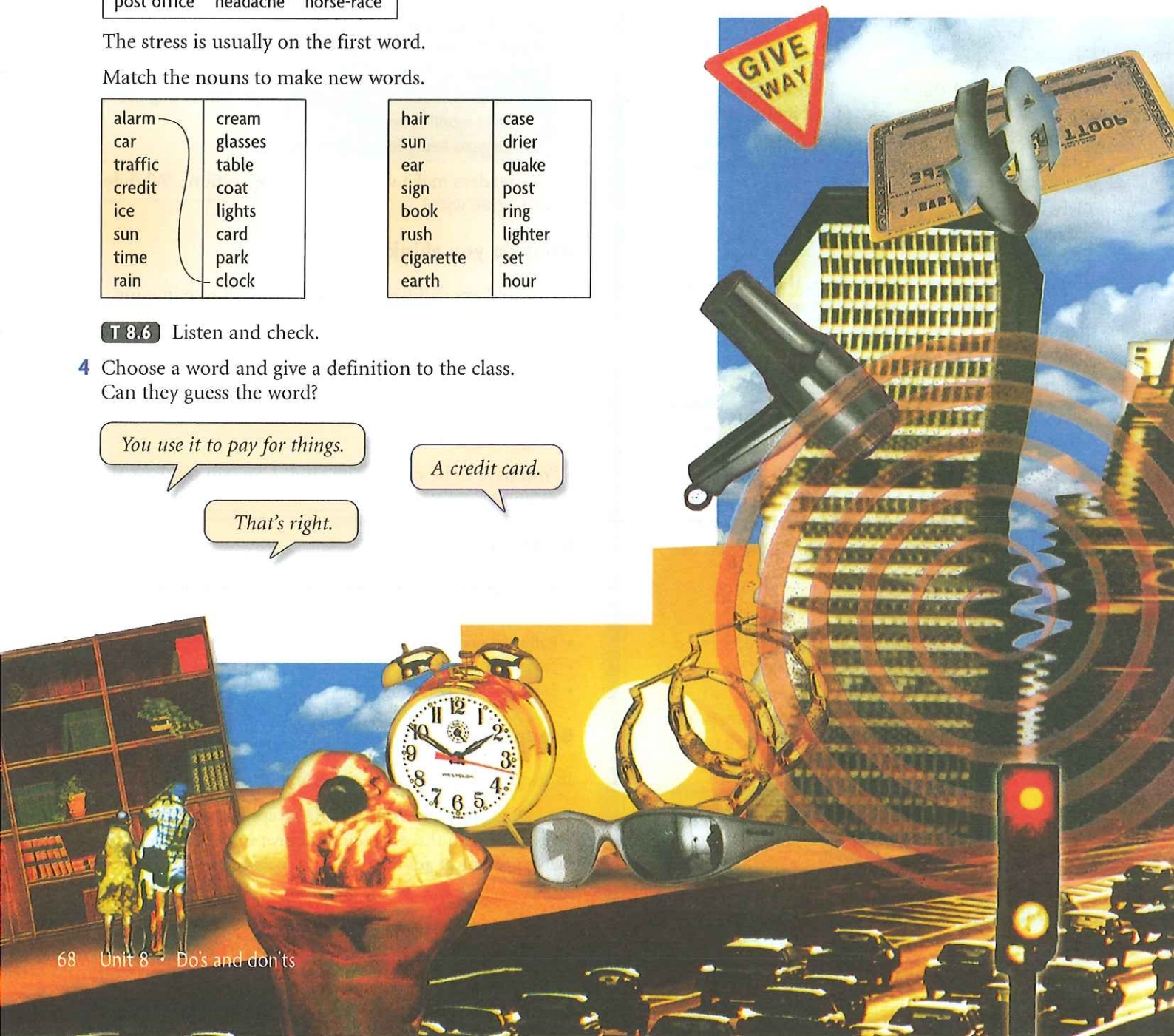
- 4 Choose a word and give a definition to the class. Can they guess the word?

You use it to pay for things.

A credit card.

That's right.

Verbs	Complements
live	being silly
write	your age
stop	abroad
act	responsibility
take	poetry
take	your job
stay	what you've missed
don't know	a word with someone
have to be	in bed
give up	your time
have	cruel to be kind



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

At the doctor's

- 1 Complete the chart with an illness or a symptom.



diarrhoea
food poisoning
'flu

It hurts when I walk on it.
My glands are swollen, and it hurts when I swallow.
I can't stop sneezing and my nose is runny.

Illnesses	Symptoms
I've got a cold.	
I've got _____.	I've got a temperature, my whole body aches, and I feel awful.
I've twisted my ankle.	
I've got _____.	I keep going to the toilet.
I've got a sore throat.	
I've got _____.	I keep being sick, and I've got diarrhoea.

What's the difference between these sentences?

I feel sick. I was sick last night.

- 2 Put the sentences in the correct order.

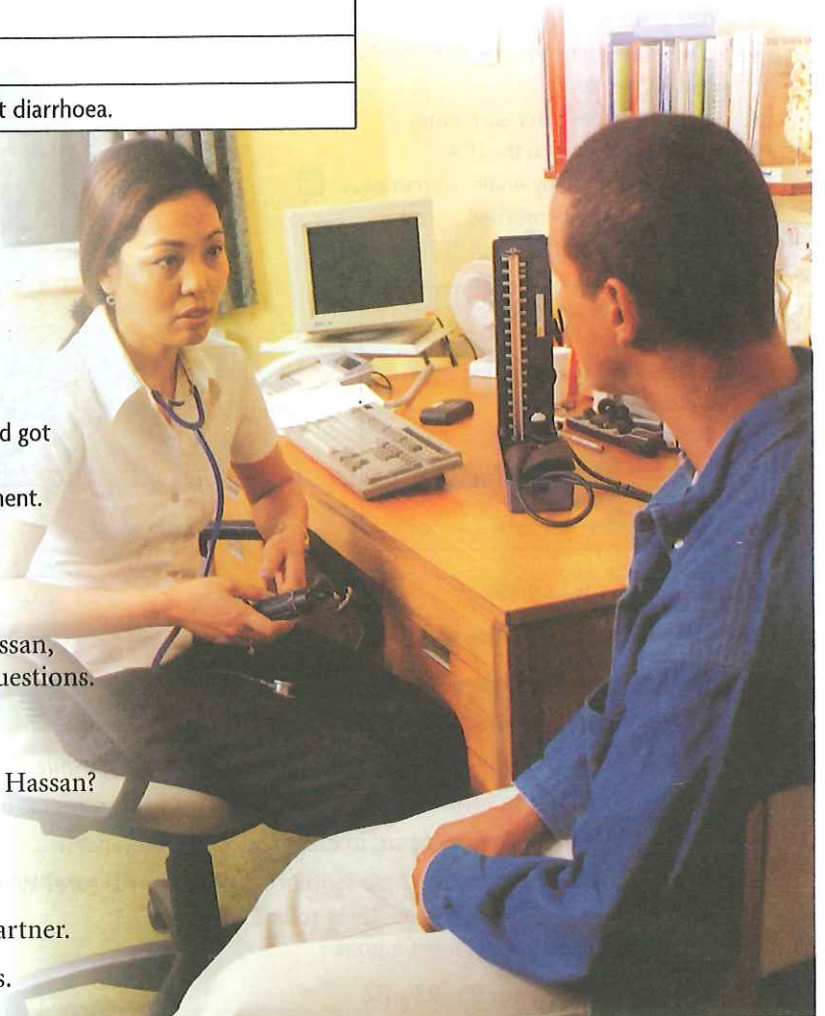
- ☒ 1 I didn't feel very well.
- ☐ 2 She took my temperature and examined me.
- ☐ 3 After a few days, I started to feel better.
- ☐ 4 I went to the surgery and saw the doctor.
- ☐ 5 I went to the pharmacy, paid for the prescription, and got some antibiotics.
- ☐ 6 I phoned the doctor's surgery and made an appointment.
- ☐ 7 She told me I had an infection.
- ☐ 8 I explained what was wrong.
- ☐ 9 She gave me a prescription.

- 3 **T 8.7** You will hear a conversation between Hassan, a student from Syria, and a doctor. Answer the questions.

- 1 What are Hassan's symptoms?
- 2 What questions does the doctor ask?
- 3 What does the doctor think is the matter with Hassan?
- 4 What does she prescribe?
- 5 What advice does she give him?
- 6 Does he have to pay for anything?

- 4 Look at the tapescript on p124. Practise with a partner.

- 5 Make similar conversations with other symptoms.





9 Going places

Time clauses • *if* • Hot verbs • In a hotel

STARTER



What do you think you will do if the weather is nice this weekend?
What will you do when you get home this evening?

PLANNING A TRIP

Time and conditional clauses

1 Clare and her friend Sally are planning a trip. Complete the sentences with phrases from the box below.

- 1 We're travelling round the world ... ☒ c
- 2 We're going to leave ... ☐
- 3 ☐ ... we're going to learn to scuba dive on the Great Barrier Reef.
- 4 ☐ ... we'll look after each other.
- 5 ☐ ... we're going to the USA.
- 6 We can stay with my American cousins ... ☐
- 7 Our parents will be worried ... ☐
- 8 We'll stay in the States ... ☐

- a while we're in Los Angeles.
 - b If we get ill,
 - c before we go to university.
 - d until our visa runs out.
 - e When we're in Australia,
 - f as soon as we have enough money.
 - g if we don't keep in touch.
 - h After we leave Australia,

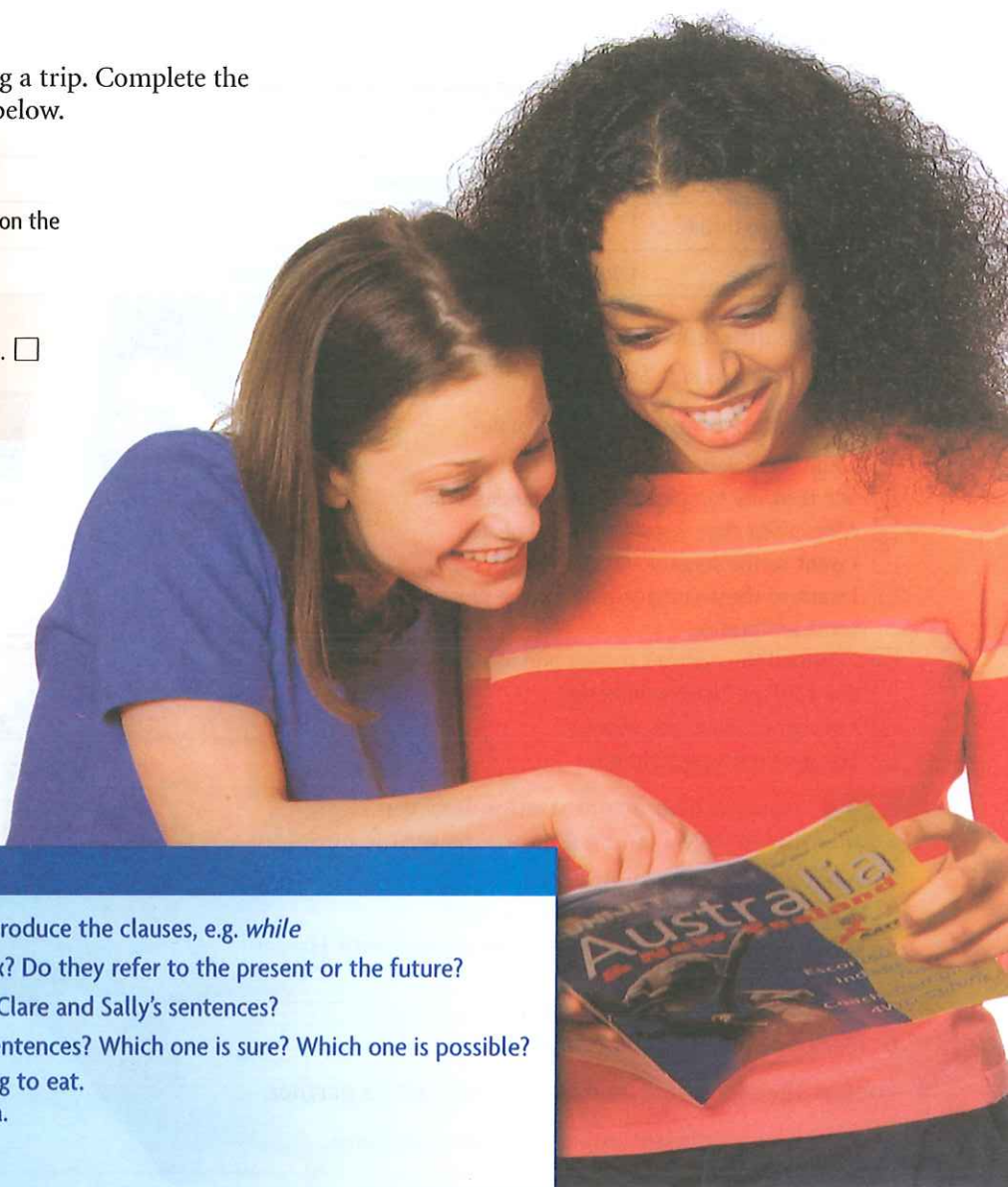
T 9.1 Listen and check.

2 Cover the box. Practise the sentences.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Underline the words in the box that introduce the clauses, e.g. *while*
- 2 Which tense are all the verbs in the box? Do they refer to the present or the future?
- 3 What are the different future forms in Clare and Sally's sentences?
- 4 What's the difference between these sentences? Which one is sure? Which one is possible?
When I get home, I'll have something to eat.
If there isn't any food, I'll get a pizza.

►► Grammar Reference 9.1–9.3 p138



PRACTICE

when, as soon as

1 Complete the sentences with your ideas.



T 9.2 Listen and compare your answers.

What if ... ?

2 Look at these hopes for the future. Make sentences using *If ... will ...*

If I don't go out so much, I'll do more work.
If I do more work, I'll ...

IF ...

I don't go out so much
 ↓
 do more work
 ↓
 pass my exams
 ↓
 go to university
 ↓
 study medicine
 ↓
 become a doctor
 ↓
 earn a good salary.

IF ...

I stop smoking
 ↓
 have more money
 ↓
 save some every week
 ↓
 be rich when I'm thirty
 ↓
 have my own business
 ↓
 make a lot of money
 ↓
 retire when I'm forty.

What will you do?

- 3 Work with a partner. One of you is going skiing for the first time. The other sees all the problems. Use these ideas to help you.

What will you do if there's no snow?

We'll go walking.

- don't like the food
- it rains
- don't learn to ski
- hurt yourself
- there's nothing to do in the evening
- don't make any friends
- lose your money
- get lost in a snowstorm



Make a similar conversation about going on safari for the first time.

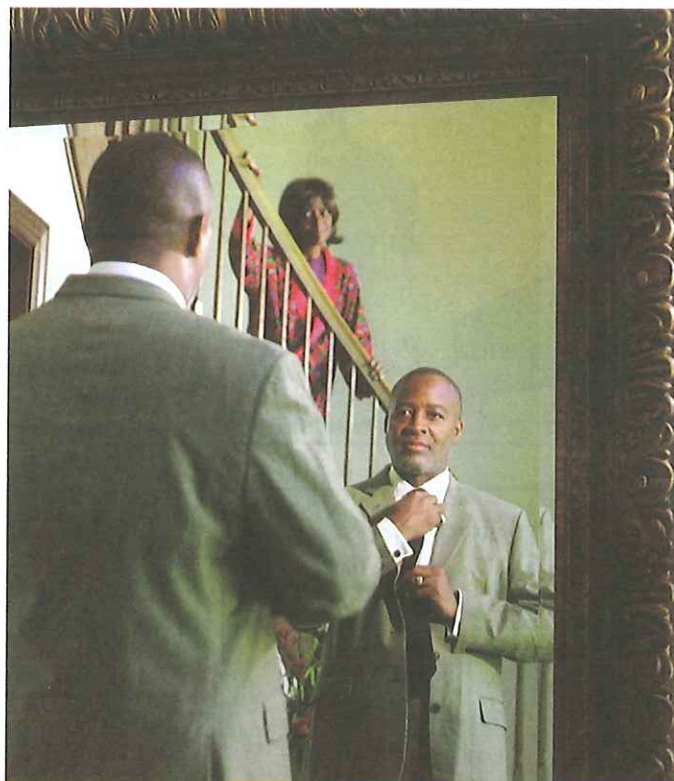


Discussing grammar

- 4 Complete the sentences with *when*, *if*, *before*, or *until*.
- I'll have a bath _____ I go to bed.
 - I'm coming to London tomorrow. I'll ring you _____ I arrive.
 - _____ it's a nice day tomorrow, we can go swimming.
 - Wait here _____ I get back.
 - _____ you have any problems, just ask for help.
 - I want to get home _____ it gets dark.
 - I'm going to have driving lessons _____ I pass my test.
 - Give me your address _____ you go home.

When I get to New York . . .

- 5 Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense. Put *if*, *when*, *while*, or *as soon as* into each box.



Mary Bye, darling. Have a good trip to New York.

Paul Thanks. I 'll ring _____ (ring) you **as soon as** I arrive at the hotel.

Mary Fine. Remember I _____ (go) out with Jenny this evening.

Paul Well, _____ you _____ (be) out _____ I _____ (ring), I _____ (leave) a message on the answerphone so you'll know I've arrived safely.

Mary Great. What time do you expect you'll be there?

Paul _____ the plane _____ (arrive) on time, I _____ (be) at the hotel about 10.00.

Mary All right. Give me a ring _____ you _____ (know) the time of your flight back, and I _____ (pick) you up at the airport.

Paul Thanks, darling. Don't forget to water the plants _____ I _____ (be) away.

Mary Don't worry. I won't. Bye!

T 9.3 Listen and check.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Life in 2050

- 1 Read this description of the airline of the future:

'There will be just two crew members, a pilot and a dog. The pilot's job is to feed the dog. The dog's job is to bite the pilot if he tries to touch anything.'

What does this story say about life in the future?

- 2 You will hear an interview with Michio Kaku, Professor of Theoretical Physics at City University, New York. He has written a book, *Visions*, which explains how science will revolutionize the 21st century.

He is asked these questions.

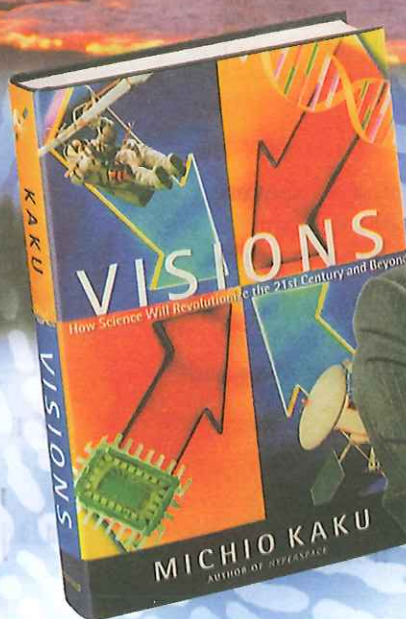
- Are you optimistic about the future?
- Are we ready for the changes that will come?
- Is world population going to be a big problem?
- What will happen to people who don't have computers?
- Will there be a world government?
- Will we have control of everything?
- What are your reasons for pessimism?

Discuss your opinions on these subjects.

- 3 **T 9.4** Listen to the interview. Make notes on Michio Kaku's answers.
- 4 Answer the questions.
- 1 What does Michio Kaku say will continue into the twenty-first century?
 - 2 How do some people react to the new technology? What is his reaction?
 - 3 Why will the population of the world stop increasing?
 - 4 Why will we need a world government?
 - 5 What are some of the things we will be able to control?
 - 6 What examples does he give of the behaviour of 'stupid' people?

What do you think?

Michio Kaku obviously believes in the power of science. What isn't he so sure about? Do you agree?



READING AND SPEAKING

The world's first megalopolis

1 Are these statements about China true or false?

- China is a communist country.
- One in five people in the whole world is Chinese.
- Chinese families can only have one child.
- Chinese people love tradition.
- Chinese people prefer bicycles to cars.
- The biggest city in the world is in China.

2 Read the newspaper article about Pearl River City. Which of the subjects in exercise 1 are talked about?

3 On the map find the following:

- Shenzhen
- Pearl River Estuary
- Guangzhou
- the Hopewell Highway

4 Answer the questions.

- 1 Has this city got a name yet?
- 2 Why is it ugly? Why is it exciting?
- 3 What are some of the statistics about Shenzhen that make it a remarkable place?
- 4 In what ways is China changing? Why were Deng Xiaoping's words significant?
- 5 How are the people changing? Why do they want to own a car?
- 6 What does Shenzhen look like?
- 7 Why will this city be important in the 21st century?
- 8 What do these numbers refer to?

1982	thousands
3 million	six months
less than ten years	two hours
40 million	four hours

What do you think?

- In groups, write what you think are the ten largest cities in the world. Compare your list with the class. Your teacher will tell you the answer.
- Make a list of some of the problems that these cities face. Decide which are the three most important problems. Compare your ideas with the class.



To the north of Hong Kong, the world's biggest city is growing. It hasn't got a new name yet, but it will probably be called Pearl River City.

Jonathon Glancey visits this ugly, exciting mess.





Megalopolis

The town of Shenzhen, just forty kilometres north of Hong Kong, is the world's biggest building site. In 1982 it was a fishing village with two main roads, fields, and a population of 30,000. Now it has a population of 3 million. It is growing at an incredible speed. It is spreading north towards Guangzhou (also known as Canton) and west towards Macau. The Chinese government hopes that in less than ten years this area will be the biggest city on earth, with a population of 40 million people.

China is changing. It is no longer a country where absolutely everything is owned and controlled by the state. Developers are welcome. As Deng Xiaoping, the Chinese leader, said in 1992, 'To get rich is glorious'. The old China of bicycles and Little Red Books is disappearing. A world of mobile phones and capitalism is arriving.

The Chinese people seem to welcome dramatic change. They don't worry about losing traditional ways of life. They want the new. As the posters on the sides of the highways shout, 'Development is the only way.'

Shenzhen is a shocking place, like nowhere else on earth that I have ever seen. It is a city with no boundaries and no centre. There are new concrete office blocks, factories, and housing blocks as far as the eye can see. Not just dozens of new buildings, nor even hundreds, but thousands. And it is all happening so fast. It takes just six months to design, build, and finish a 60-storey, air-conditioned skyscraper. As one architect said to me, 'If you move too slowly here, someone will walk over you.'

The new Hopewell Highway runs from Shenzhen to Guangzhou, and it takes just two hours to do the 123 kilometres. This superhighway will become the main street of a huge new city, as it gets bigger and bigger until the east meets the west, and the countryside in the middle disappears under concrete.

There will of course be more and more cars on the road. People don't want bicycles. If you have a car, it means you have made money. So the traffic will be like in Bangkok, where people spend four hours commuting every day. People eat and work in their car.

Pearl River City very nearly exists. It will probably be the world's First City, the greatest city on earth. It won't be beautiful, but its power, energy, and wealth will be felt in all corners of the world.

VOCABULARY

Hot verbs – take, get, do, and make

- 1 The verbs *take*, *get*, *do*, and *make* are very common in English. Find these examples in the text about China:

get rich it **gets** bigger and bigger you have **made** money
it **takes** two hours **to do** 123 kilometres

- 2 Here are some more examples.

A How long does it take you to get ready in the morning?

B It takes me about fifteen minutes.

A How long does it take you to get to school?

B I can get here in twenty minutes.

A Do you get tired in the evening?

B Yes. Especially if I've done a lot of homework.

A Do you make a lot of mistakes in English?

B Well, I do my best, but I still make a few mistakes.

Ask and answer the same questions with a partner.

- 3 Put the words and phrases from the box in the correct column.

some shopping back home two tablets a day a cold
angry sure friends up your mind a photo
somebody out for a meal me a favour a reservation
on well with someone a complaint care

TAKE	GET	DO	MAKE

- 4 Complete the sentences with one of the verb phrases. Use the correct form of the verb.

- I _____ while I was in Paris. I bought myself a new sweater.
- 'I don't know if I want coffee or tea.' '_____. You can't have them both.'
- Bye-bye! See you soon. _____ of yourself.
- Achoo! Oh dear. I think _____.
- 'Are the doors locked?' 'I think so, but I'll just _____.'

T 9.5 Listen and check.

- 5 Discuss these questions with a partner.

- How long does it take to get from your school to the station? From your home to work?
- When did you last do someone a favour/make a complaint/take a photo/get angry?
- What time did you get home last night?
- Do you get on with your parents/your neighbours?
- Do you find it easy to make friends?
- Is your English getting better?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

In a hotel

- What is the best hotel in your city? What facilities does the hotel have?
- Ask and answer questions with a partner about the Grand Hotel.

Where's the conference centre?

On the second floor.

The Grand Hotel

Ground Floor	Reception City Café
First Floor	Dining Room Buckingham Rooms
Second Floor	Conference Centre
Top Floor	Panorama Restaurant
Basement	Gym Swimming pool

- 3 Put the lines from the telephone conversation between the receptionist and client in the right order.

Receptionist Hello, the Grand Hotel. Cathy speaking. How can I help you?

Client reservation / make / like / a / I'd / to / please

Receptionist Certainly. When is it for?

Client It's for two nights, the thirteenth and the fourteenth of this month.

Receptionist single / want / do / room / or / double / a / And / you / a

Client A single, please.

Receptionist OK. Yes, that's fine. I have a room for you. And your name is?

Client Robert Palmer.

much / you / Can / it / tell / how / is / me

Receptionist Yes. That's £95 a night. Can I have a credit card number, please?

Client Yes, sure. It's a Visa. 4929 7983 0621 8849.

Receptionist Thank you.

number / could / And / phone / I / have / a

Client Uh huh. 01727 489962.

Receptionist That's fine.

forward / look / seeing / on / you / We / to / thirteenth / the

. Bye-bye.

Client Thanks a lot. Goodbye.

T 9.6 Listen and check.

- 4 With a partner, roleplay the conversation between Robert Palmer and the receptionist as he checks into the hotel.

Good evening.

Hello. I have a reservation. My name's Robert Palmer.

- 5 Roleplay these conversations with your partner. Phone Reception from your room. Make these requests.

- You can't get the TV to work.
- You'd like an extra pillow.
- You'd like to order Room Service.
- You'd like a wake-up call at 7.00 tomorrow morning.





10 Scared to death

Verb patterns 2 - manage to, used to • -ed/-ing adjectives • Exclamations

STARTER



1 What are these people afraid of? How do they feel?



2 What are you afraid of? Why?

A WALK WITH DEATH

Verb patterns and infinitives

1 Look at the photograph. Does the path look safe to you?

Read about Paul Lay's adventure. How did he feel at different times in the story?

2 Complete the text using these words.

began to feel started aching
used to have went camping
decided to stand up

T 10.1 Listen and check.

3 Answer the questions.

- 1 What is Paul Lay's hobby?
- 2 What did he use to do with his father?
- 3 Does he go to the same place every year?
- 4 Is the King's Way in good condition?
- 5 Why couldn't he have a rest?
- 6 Why didn't he enjoy the walk?

Don't look down



Paul Lay dances with death in the mountains of southern Spain

I have always enjoyed walking.

When I was a boy, I used to go walking at weekends with my father. We (1) _____ and climbing together.

I try to visit a new place every year. Last year I decided to walk a path in Spain called *El Camino del Rey*, which means the King's Way. It is one of the highest and most dangerous footpaths in Europe. It used to be very safe, but now it is falling down.

I took a train to the village of El Chorro and started to walk towards the mountains. I was very excited. Then the adventure began.

The path was about three feet wide and there were holes in it. It (2) _____ a handrail, but not any more. I didn't know what to do – should I go on my hands and knees, or stand up? I (3) _____ and walk very slowly. At times the path was only as wide as my two boots. I stopped to have a rest, but there was nowhere to sit.

I (4) _____ very frightened. It was impossible to look down or look up. I was concentrating so hard that my body (5) _____. There was no thrill of danger, no enjoyment of the view. I thought I was going to die.

I finally managed to get to the end. I was shaking, and I was covered in sweat from heat and fear. I fell to the ground, exhausted.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Are these verbs followed by the infinitive or -ing in the text?
enjoy try decide start begin manage

2 Find the examples of *used to* + infinitive.

Used to expresses a past action which doesn't happen any more.

*I **used to** play games with my brother, but now I don't.*

Notice the pronunciation /ju:st tu/.

3 Complete these examples from the text.

I used to go _____ at weekends.

I didn't know what _____.

I stopped _____ a rest.

It was impossible _____ down.

There was nowhere _____.

►► Grammar Reference 10.1–10.4 p139

PRACTICE

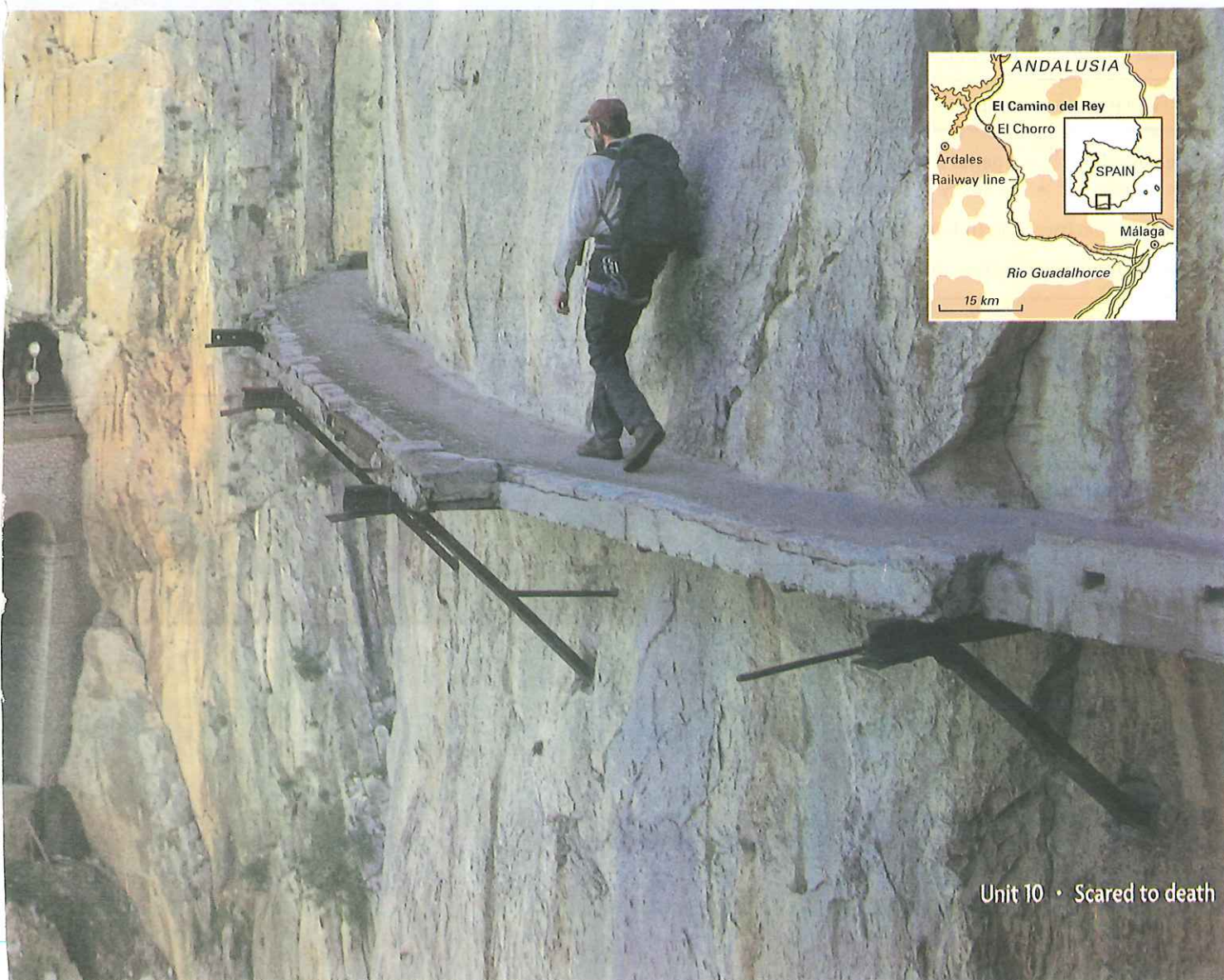
Discussing grammar

1 Complete these sentences with the verb *swim* in the correct form.

- I go _____ every summer.
- I started _____ when I was six.
- I tried _____ in the sea, but it was too rough.
- My instructor made me _____ up and down the pool.
- I enjoy _____ very much.
- Dave used _____ when he was younger, but not any more.

2 Choose the correct form.

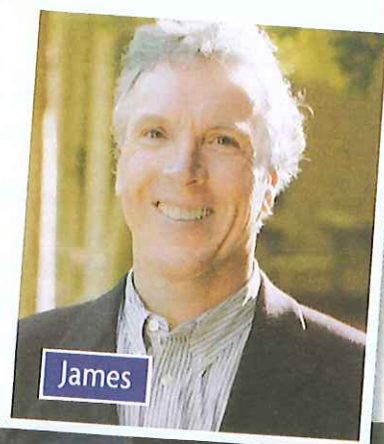
- I've decided *stop* / *to stop* / *stopping* smoking.
- I managed *find* / *to find* / *finding* my passport.
- Let's go *shop* / *to shop* / *shopping*!
- Please let me *go* / *to go* / *going* to the picnic!
- Would you like something *eat* / *to eat* / *eating*?
- I need a recipe for a cake that's easy *make* / *to make* / *making*.



When I was young, I used to ...

- 3 **T 10.2** Listen to James talking about his childhood and his life now. Complete the chart. Write one sentence with *used to* for each question.

	Life as a child
1 What/do at the weekend?	
2 What/do in the evening?	
3 Where/go on holiday?	
4 What sports/play?	
5 What TV programmes/like?	
6 What food/like?	



Ask and answer the questions above with a partner about your life now and your life as a child.

What do you do at the weekend?

I usually go shopping and ...

What did you do when you were a child?

I used to play with my friends and ...

Infinitives

- 4 Why do you go to these places?

Why do you go to the hairdresser's?

To have a haircut.

- the post office
- a petrol station
- a bookshop
- the pharmacy
- the library
- the market

With your partner, ask and answer questions about more places.

- 5 Make sentences with a line in **A**, a word in **B**, and an infinitive in **C**.

A	B	C
1 I'm hungry. I need	how	to say to you.
2 I'm going to a formal dinner, but I don't know	anything	to talk to.
3 My CD player's broken. Can you show me	where	to eat.
4 Don't talk to me. I have	somebody	to wear.
5 Do I turn left or right? I don't know	how much	to repair it?
6 I'm bored. I haven't got	nothing	to do.
7 'Can you get some meat?' 'Sure. Tell me	something	to go.
8 I feel lonely. I need	what	to buy.'

- T 10.3** Think of some replies. Then listen and compare your answers.

Check it

- 6 Choose the correct form.

- 1 I went to the shops *for to buy / for buy / to buy* some shoes.
- 2 Do you enjoy *read / reading / to read*?
- 3 When I was young, I used *to go / go / going* ice-skating.
- 4 He told me he is moving to Canada. I didn't know what *say / to say / saying*.
- 5 When we were on holiday, we went *swim / to swim / swimming* every day.

VOCABULARY

-ed/-ing adjectives

1 How can you describe the experiences below? Use an adjective from the box.

frightening exciting surprising terrifying boring exhausting

- 1 You get stuck in a lift.
- 2 You go on a 15-mile walk, then climb three mountains.
- 3 You go on the biggest roller coaster in the world.
- 4 You find a spider in the bath.
- 5 Someone shows you their holiday photos for hours and hours ..
- 6 Your teacher says 'You're all such wonderful students that I won't give you any more homework.'

2 How do the people in the photos feel?

He's **frightened**.

T 10.4 Listen and practise the pronunciation of these words.

- ! 1 -ing adjectives describe a situation, person, or thing.
 an **interesting** life
 a **boring** teacher
 an **exciting** film
- 2 -ed adjectives describe how people feel.
 I'm very **interested** in modern art.
 We were **bored** at the end of the lesson.
 She's **excited** about going on holiday tomorrow.

3 Complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives.

excit-	
frighten-	
bore-	-ed
interest-	
confus-	
disappoint-	-ing
worry/worri-	
surpris-	

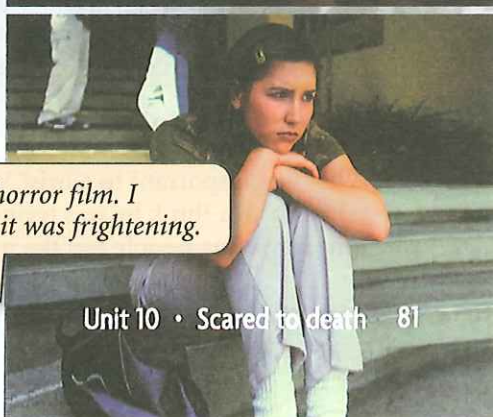
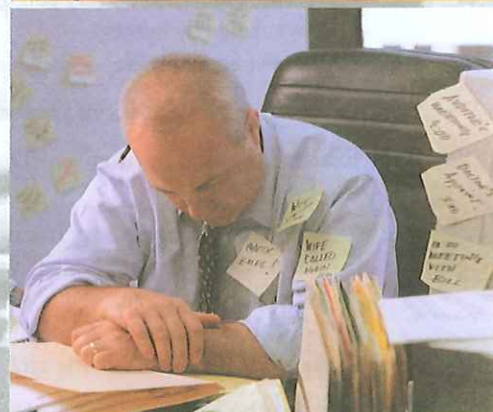
- 1 'I met a famous film star today.' 'Really? How _____!'
- 2 'I spent four hours going round a museum.' 'Was it _____?'
 'No, it was _____.'
- 3 'I haven't heard from my parents for two months.' 'You must be _____.'
- 4 'Wow, Maria! What are you doing here?' 'Why are you so _____ to see me?'
- 5 I failed my exam. I worked really hard for it. I'm so _____.
- 6 'Smoke started to come from the front of the plane.' 'Weren't you _____?'
- 7 My computer's broken, and I don't understand the manual. It's so _____.

T 10.5 Close your books. Listen to the beginnings of the lines. Complete them.

4 What have you seen on television or in the cinema recently? What books have you read? What did you think of them? Tell a partner.

*I read a spy novel.
It was very exciting.*

*I saw a horror film. I
thought it was frightening.*



READING AND SPEAKING

Into the wild

- 1 Describe what you can see in the photograph. Which country do you think it is? What makes life difficult for people who live here?
- 2 Read the introductory paragraph and the words in **bold**. In pairs, decide whether these statements are true (✓) or false (X).
 - Chris McCandless died very young.
 - He loved nature and a simple life.
 - He was killed by hunters.
 - He wanted to die.
 - He didn't enjoy his life.
 - He knew he was dying.

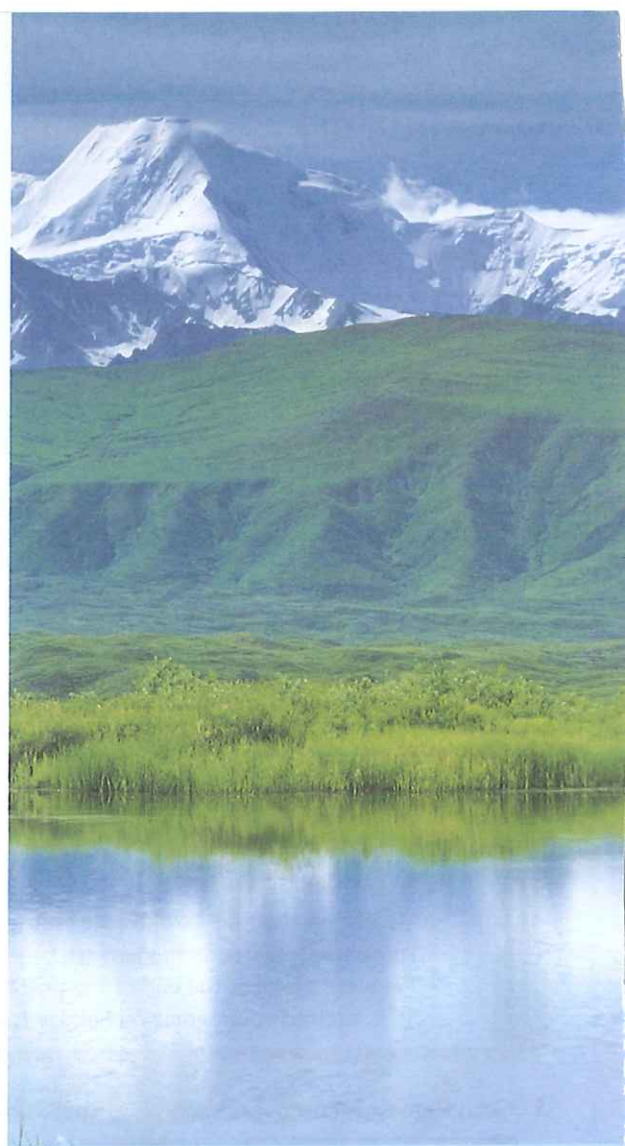
What do you want to know about Chris?

- 3 Read to the line ending "... *Thank you!*" his diary reads." and answer the questions.
 - 1 Did Chris keep in touch with his parents?
When did they last hear from him?
 - 2 Why did he get rid of his car and burn his money?
 - 3 What did he need? What didn't he need?
 - 4 In what way was his life rich?
- 4 Read to the line ending "... *I didn't know where he was.*" Choose the best answer.
 - 1 Chris didn't get on with his father because his father
 - ☐ had a lot of money.
 - ☐ didn't let Chris work in the family business.
 - ☐ tried to tell Chris what to do.
 - 2 When the parents didn't hear from Chris,
 - ☐ the police got in touch with them.
 - ☐ they got in touch with the police.
 - ☐ they did nothing.
 - 3 In July 1992
 - ☐ his mother dreamt that she heard Chris calling her.
 - ☐ his mother is sure that she heard Chris calling her.
 - ☐ Chris phoned his mother for help.
- 5 Read to the end. Correct the mistakes in this summary.

Chris got the train to Alaska, and arrived in May, 1992. He lived in a bus, and there was a bed and a bath in it. He was very happy. There was lots to eat – small animals, and fruit and vegetables, which he grew himself.

After five months of living alone, he started to feel ill. He had no strength because he was eating poisonous plants, but he didn't know that this was the reason. He continued eating. He died of food poisoning.

He knew he was dying. He wrote a letter to his parents, and took a photo of himself. He seemed happy to die in these circumstances.



In April 1992, Chris McCandless, a young man from a wealthy American family, hitchhiked to Alaska. Four months later, his dead body was found by a group of hunters. Jon Krakauer investigated the story.

When Chris McCandless graduated from Emory University, Atlanta, in June 1990, he sent his parents a letter containing his final reports. His letter ended 'Say 'Hi' to everyone for me.'

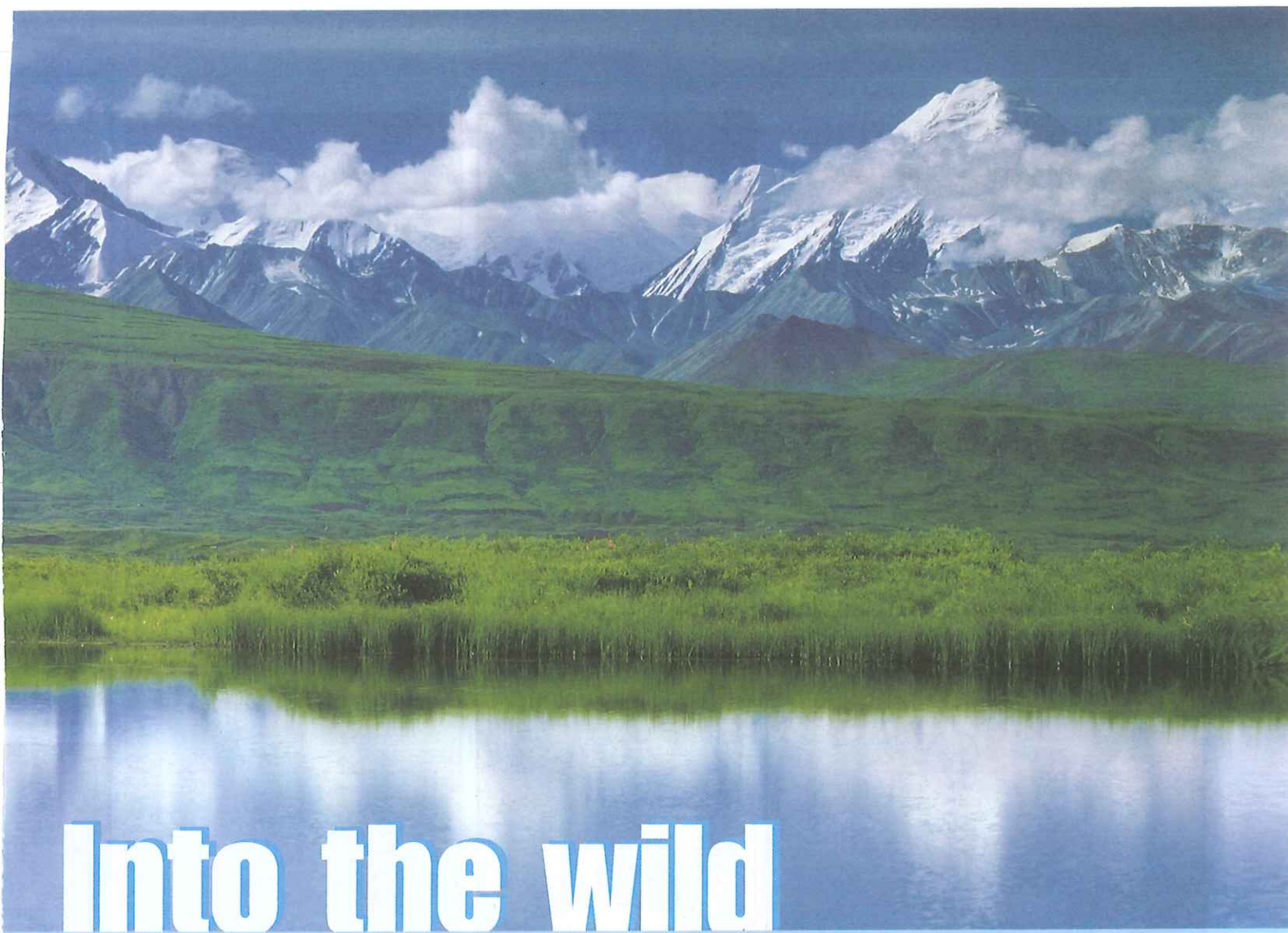
No one in Chris's family ever heard from him again.

He drove west out of Atlanta, and invented a new life for himself with a new name. He left his car in some woods and burned all his money, because, as he wrote in his diary, '**I need no possessions. I can survive with just nature.**'

For the next two years, he hitched to various parts of the United States and

What do you think?

- What was important to Chris? What wasn't important?
- What do you think he was trying to do?
- Why do young people feel the need to break away from their parents?



Into the wild

Mexico. He wanted the freedom to go where he wanted and to work when he needed. For him, his life was very rich. **'God, it's great to be alive. Thank you! Thank you!'** his diary reads.

Chris came from a comfortable background. His father had a business which he ran efficiently, and he controlled his own family in a similar way. Chris and his father didn't get on. When his parents didn't hear from him for several months, they contacted the police, but they could do nothing. In July 1992, two years after Chris left Atlanta, his mother woke in the middle of the night. 'I could hear Chris calling me. I wasn't dreaming. He was begging, 'Mom! Help me!' But I couldn't help him because I didn't know where he was.'

Chris's dream was to spend some time in Alaska, and this is where he went in April 1992. In early May, after a few days in the Alaskan bush, Chris found an old bus which hunters used for shelter. It had a bed and a stove. He decided to stay there for a while. **'Total freedom,'** he wrote. **'My home is the road.'**

'I need no possessions. I can survive with just nature.'

However, reality soon changed the dream. He was hungry, and it was difficult to find enough to eat. He shot ducks, squirrels, birds, and sometimes a moose, and with these he ate wild potatoes, wild mushrooms, and berries. He was losing a lot of weight.

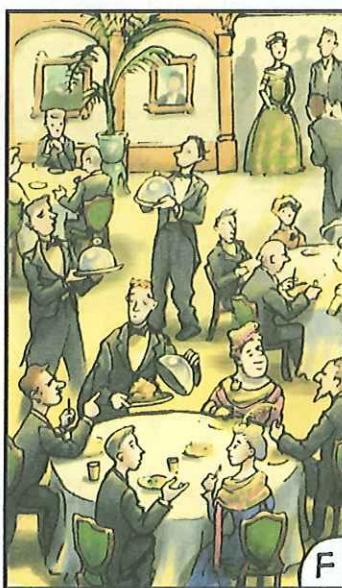
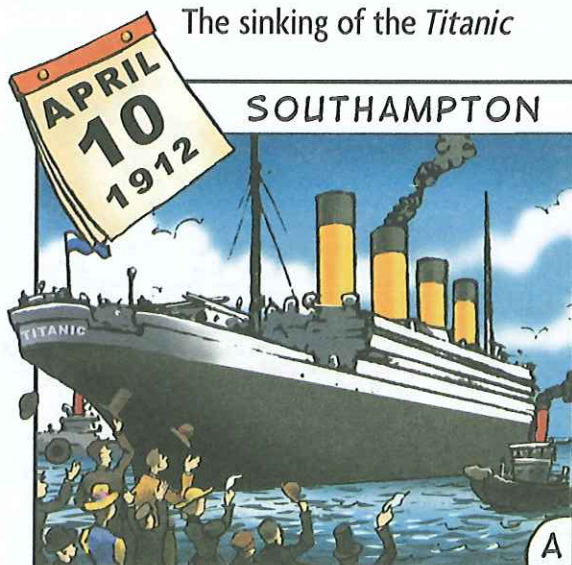
On July 30 he wrote, **'Extremely weak. Fault of potato seed. Can't stand up. Starving. Danger.'** It seems that Chris was eating a part of the wild potato plant that was poisonous. He couldn't get out of the bus to look for food. **'I am trapped in the wild,'** he wrote on August 5.

He became weaker and weaker as he was starving to death. His final note says, **'I have had a good life and thank the Lord. Goodbye and may God bless all!'**

Then he crawled into his sleeping bag and lost consciousness. He probably died on August 18. One of the last things he did was to take a photo of himself, one hand holding his final note, the other hand raised in a brave goodbye. His face is horribly thin, but he is smiling in the picture, and the look in his eyes says 'I am at peace.'

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

The sinking of the *Titanic*



- 1 What do you know about the sinking of the *Titanic*?

It happened at the beginning of the twentieth century.
There was a film about it starring Leonardo DiCaprio.

- 2 You will listen to the story of the disaster.

What do you want to know about it?

How many people died?

Weren't there any warnings about icebergs?

- 3 Look at the pictures. Tell the story in your own words.

The *Titanic* was the biggest and most luxurious ship of its time.
It left Southampton on ...

- 4 **T 10.6** Listen to two people talking about the *Titanic*.
Put the pictures in the order they talk about them.

1 _____	4 _____	7 _____
2 _____	5 _____	8 _____
3 _____	6 _____	9 _____

- 5 What do these numbers refer to?

1324	900	two	four days and nineteen hours
twenty	two hours	1,500	706

- 6 Match a line of dialogue to a picture.

- 'Bye! I hope you enjoy living in America!' **Picture a**
- 'Iceberg ahead! Iceberg ahead! Slow down!'
- 'Women and children first! Let the women and children go first!'
- 'We have seen icebergs in your area. Look out for them.'
- 'Faster! Faster! As fast as she can go!'
- 'We'll continue playing until the end. We don't want people to worry.'
- 'Look at that! It's huge! We're going to hit it.'
- 'Would you like a dessert, sir?'
- 'I can't look! It's so horrible! I thought the ship was unsinkable.'

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Exclamations with *so* and *such*

1 T 10.7 Read and listen to the sentences.

Tom was scared. He was very scared. He was so scared!

Do you think this use of *so* is more written or spoken? What effect does it have?

2 Look at the sentences. When do we use *so*, *such a(n)*, *such*, *so many*, and *so much*?

We were all *so* worried!

The *Titanic* was *such a* luxurious ship!

It was *such an* awful accident!

They saw *such huge* icebergs!

It was *such terrible* weather!

There are *so many* places I want to go to!

I've got *so much* work!

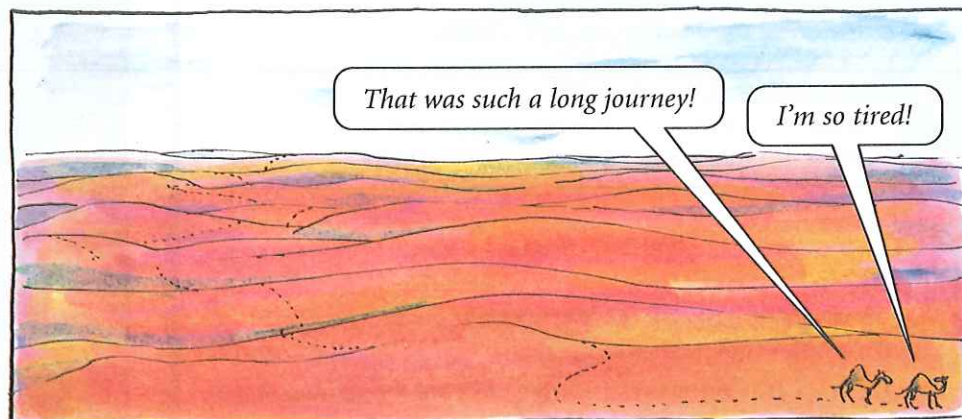
3 Complete the sentences in A with *so*, *such a*, *such*, *so many*, or *so much*. Then match them with the sentences in B.

A	B
1 Their house is _____ mess!	I could eat a horse.
2 There were _____ people at my birthday party!	I don't know where it's all gone.
3 I'm _____ hungry!	You really didn't have to.
4 Noor and Nabeel are _____ nice people!	She understands every word I say.
5 I've spent _____ money this week!	We had to order more food.
6 A present! For me? You're _____ kind!	Thank you so much for inviting us.
7 We've had _____ nice time!	But I can't stand their kids.
8 Molly's _____ clever child!	I don't know how they live in it.

T 10.8 Listen and check. Practise the exclamations.

4 What can you say ... ?

- at the end of a long journey



- when you finish an interesting book with a sad ending
- as you go round a friend's new flat
- at the end of a wonderful meal
- in a row with your best friend
- at the end of a great English lesson

Roleplay

Student A You are a journalist in New York.

Student B You are one of the passengers who survived the disaster.

A When did you know something was wrong?

B

...

A How was the voyage before that?

B

...



11 Things that changed the world

Passives • Verbs and nouns that go together • Notices

STARTER



- 1 Make true sentences from the chart.
- 2 What is made and grown in your country?

Rice	is are	made in grown in	Japan.
Ferraris			Hawaii.
Nikon cameras			Brazil.
Coffee			Italy.
Pineapples			China.

A PHOTOGRAPH THAT CHANGED THE WORLD

Passives

- 1 Read the story of X-rays on p87. Are these sentences true(✓) or false(X)?

- 1 ☐ X-rays were discovered by Wilhelm Roentgen in 1986.
- 2 ☐ The first X-ray photograph was taken by Roentgen's wife.
- 3 ☐ The first X-ray machine was also invented by Roentgen.
- 4 ☐ It is called 'the window into the human body'.
- 5 ☐ X-rays are only used in medicine.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Nearly all the verb forms in the text are in the passive. The passive is formed with the verb *to be* and the past participle.

*X-ray machines **are used** every day.*

*The first X-ray machine **was built** in 1896.*

- 2 Read the text again. Write the passive verb forms in the chart.

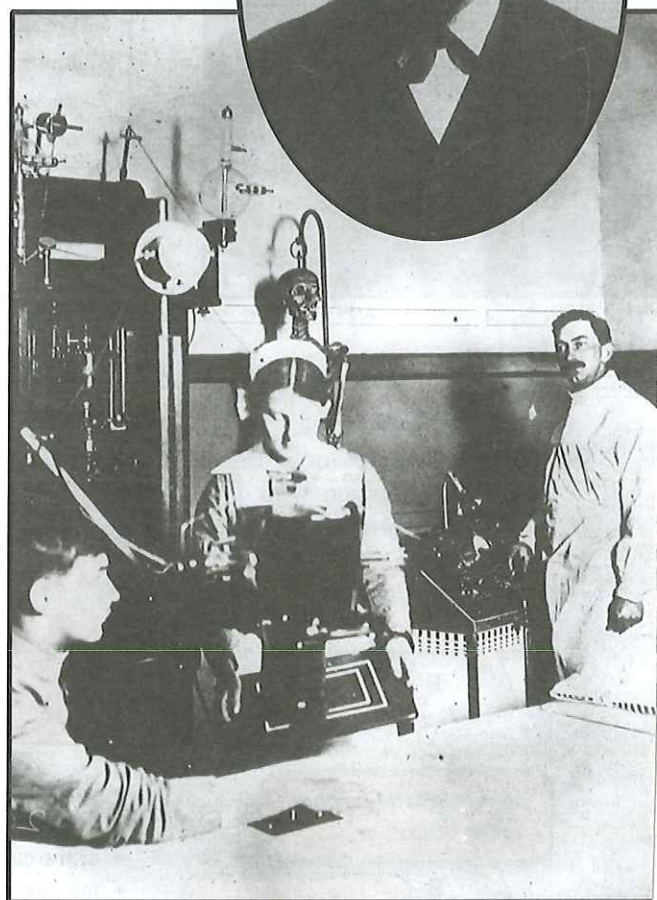
Present Simple	Past Simple	Present Perfect	will Future
are seen			

- 3 What is the main interest of the text? X-rays or Wilhelm Roentgen? When we are more interested in the object of the active sentence, we use the passive.

Active: *Wilhelm Roentgen discovered X-rays.*

Passive: *X-rays were discovered by Wilhelm Roentgen.*

►► Grammar Reference 11.1 p140



A photograph that changed the world

This is the first X-ray photograph. It was taken by a German scientist, Wilhelm Konrad Roentgen, in 1896. It is his wife's hand. The bones in her hand (and also her wedding ring!) are clearly seen in the photo.

X-rays were discovered by accident, while Roentgen was experimenting with electricity. Soon after, he built the first X-ray machine. Immediately, hospital operations were made much safer. For the first time, doctors could see inside people's bodies before they cut them open! In 1901, Roentgen was awarded the very first Nobel Prize in Physics. His invention is still used every day by doctors and dentists, and is called 'the window into the human body'.

Since the introduction of computer imaging in the 1970s, X-ray machines have been used for other things, too. At airports, many criminals have been caught with illegal items in their luggage. Also, lost works of art have been discovered underneath other paintings. In factories, many faults in new products are found every day, using X-rays. It is certain that X-rays will be used for a long time in the future.



Active and passive

2 Complete these sentences.

Active	Passive
1 They make Rolls Royce cars in Britain.	1 Rolls Royce cars _____ in Britain.
2 Over 5 million people _____ the Eiffel Tower every year.	2 The Eiffel Tower is visited by over 5 million people every year.
3 Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.	3 The telephone _____ by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
4 Thieves _____ 'The Scream' by Edvard Munch from a museum in Norway in 2004.	4 'The Scream' by Edvard Munch was stolen from a museum in Norway in 2004.
5 They _____ a Van Gogh painting for \$82 million.	5 A Van Gogh painting has been sold for \$82 million.
6 More than 2,000 people _____ Mount Everest.	6 Mount Everest has been climbed by more than 2,000 people.
7 BMW will produce 200,000 Mini cars next year.	7 200,000 Mini cars _____ by BMW next year.
8 _____ Leonardo da Vinci _____ the helicopter?	8 Was the helicopter invented by Leonardo da Vinci?
9 Bell didn't invent television.	9 Television _____ by Bell.

PRACTICE

Active and passive

- 1 What is paper made of? Who invented it? Read 'The history of paper' and check your ideas. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense, active or passive.

T 11.1 Listen and check.

Questions and answers

- 2 Match the question words and answers.

When? (x2)	Ts'ai Lun.
Where? (x2)	About 300 kg.
Who / by?	In Spain.
How long?	In AD 105.
How much?	Since the 18th century.
	In China.
	In the 10th century.

- 3 Write the questions, using the passive. Ask and answer them with a partner.

When was paper invented?

In AD 105.

T 11.2 Listen and check.

- 4 Correct these sentences.

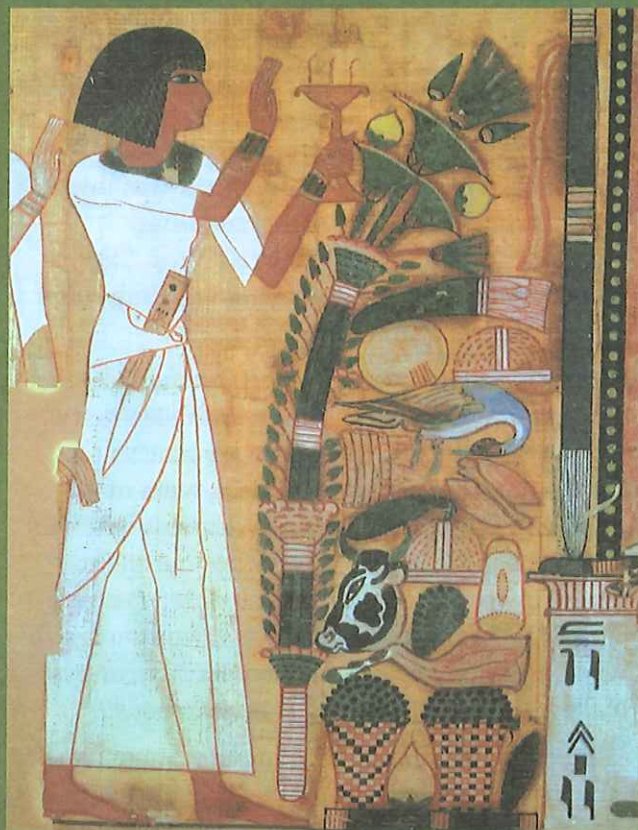
- Paper is only used to make newspapers and books.
No, it isn't. It's used to make hundreds of everyday things.
- All clothes are made out of paper.
No, they aren't. Only some ...
- Before paper, people wrote on trees.
- Paper was invented by a Chinese scientist.
- The Chinese gave their invention to the world immediately.
- They made paper out of wood.
- The first paper mill in Europe was built in France.
- Paper has been made out of cloth since the 18th century.

T 11.3 Listen and check.

Check it

- 5 Underline the correct word or words in each sentence.

- Where *was* / *were* these shoes made?
- I was given this watch *by* / *from* my uncle.
- Someone *has stolen* / *has been stolen* my bag!
- The newsagent *sells* / *is sold* stamps.
- British policemen *don't carry* / *aren't carried* guns.
- All the tea was *drank* / *drunk* by nine o'clock.
- Have all the sandwiches *eaten* / *been eaten*?



The history of paper

Today, paper (1) _____ (use) for hundreds of everyday things – books and newspapers, of course, but also money, stamps, cups, bags, and even some clothes.

Long ago, before paper, people (2) _____ (write) on animal skins, bones and stones. Then in 2700 BC, the Egyptians (3) _____ (start) to make papyrus, which was similar to paper. But the first real paper (4) _____ (invent) in AD 105 by a Chinese government official, Ts'ai Lun. It (5) _____ (make) from a mixture of plants and cloth. The Chinese (6) _____ (keep) their invention secret for centuries.

Finally, in the 10th century, paper (7) _____ (bring) to Europe by the Arabs. The first European paper mill (8) _____ (build) in Spain in 1150. Since the 18th century, most paper (9) _____ (make) out of wood, because it is much stronger than cloth.

Nowadays, each person (10) _____ (use) about 300 kg of paper every year. That's a lot of paper!

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Verbs and nouns that go together

- 1 Around each verb, *one* noun does *not* go with it. Which one?

a cure the truth discover gold DNA Aspirin	cars a discovery make homework a phone call £1,000
hello a story tell the truth a joke a lie	advice a present give information a complaint a lift
the bus weight lose money the game the way	a watch an umbrella carry a gun passengers a briefcase
the peace a diary keep a secret a promise an idea	the family the ball miss the bus the way school

- 2 Work with a partner. Choose a noun from each group, and write a sentence using the verb. Read your sentences to the class.

BMW cars are made in Germany.

An Airbus can carry 555 passengers.

- 3 There are eight nouns that do *not* go with the verbs in exercise 1. Which verbs do they go with? Complete the sentences with the correct verbs.

- Aspirin was _____ by the German chemist Felix Hoffmann in 1897.
- I _____ my homework very quickly, then I went out.
- This is my father's watch. He _____ it every day until he died.
- _____ hello to your parents from me when you see them.
- Are you the manager? We'd like to _____ a complaint.
- I was late for work because I _____ the bus.
- I'm no good at reading maps so we completely _____ our way.
- I've just _____ a really good idea! Do you want to hear it?

Talking about you

- 4 Answer these questions about yourself. Then ask and answer them with a partner.
- Do you always wear a watch?
 - Are you good at telling jokes?
 - What was the last present you gave? Who to?
 - What was the last phone call you made? Who to? Why?
 - Do you keep a diary?
 - Have you or a friend ever made a complaint in a restaurant?
 - Have you ever been homesick? Did you miss your family or your friends?
 - What is the best advice you've ever been given?

T 11.4 Listen and compare answers.



READING AND SPEAKING

A discovery and an invention that changed the world

- 1 Which of these are discoveries and which are inventions?
 - the telephone • television • the atom
 - radium • the Internet • the electric light
 - penicillin
- 2 Work in groups. Copy the list of discoveries and inventions in exercise 1, and add three more. Give it to another group.
- 3 Look at your new list. Which things changed the world the most? Choose the top three. Then compare your ideas with the class. Do you all agree?
- 4 You are going to read texts about DNA and *Google*. Which is a discovery? Which is an invention? All these words appear in the texts. Look up any words you don't know in a dictionary. Which words do you think go with each text?

nouns	weblink disease	structure result	company search engine	cure cell
verbs	contain dream	borrow be related to	commit (a crime)	

- 5 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about DNA.

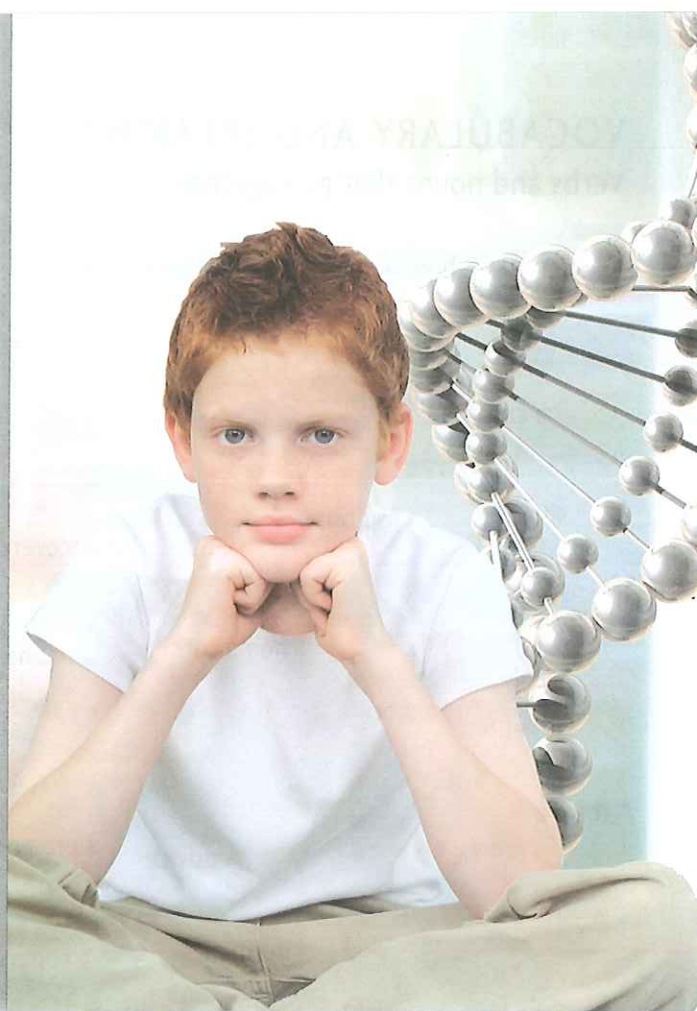
Group B Read about *Google*.

Which words from exercise 4 are in your text?

- 6 Answer the questions.
 - 1 Who made the discovery/invention?
 - 2 How long did it take to develop?
 - 3 Were there any problems in the beginning?
 - 4 What are important dates in its history?
 - 5 How useful is the discovery/invention now? Give an example.
 - 6 What could happen with it in the future?
- 7 Find a partner from the other group. Tell your partner about your discovery/invention, using your answers from exercise 6.

What do you think?

- Were DNA or *Google* in your original list from exercise 2? Why?/Why not?
- What stories have been in the news recently where DNA was involved?
- Have you used *Google*? If yes, what were the last three searches you made?



The discovery of DNA

Did you know that a tiny piece of your hair gives us information about ... ?

- who you are related to
- which career you could be successful in
- any crimes you have committed
- what illnesses you could get
- how and when you could die

This is possible thanks to the information in DNA (or deoxyribonucleic acid). Your hair and every cell in your body contains your own unique DNA. It can tell you a lot about your family, health, and personality.

DNA was discovered by a German scientist, Friedrich Miescher, in 1869, but nobody realized its importance then. Other scientists thought that it was too simple to contain the map of how we are made! In 1953, a group of British scientists at Cambridge University finally discovered the structure of DNA and how it worked. They were given the Nobel Prize for Medicine in 1962. Gradually, scientists learned to 'read' more and more of the information in DNA. In 1986, for the first time

DNA testing was used by the police. Some DNA is usually left by a criminal at the place where the crime was committed. This can be matched with DNA from a suspect. The test shows if the suspect is guilty.

In 1990 the Human Genome Project was begun. Scientists wanted to make a map of the 3 billion chemical letters in human DNA. Over 1,000 scientists all over the world worked on the project, and it took 10 years. With this information, it is possible that a cure for many diseases will be found in the future. But it also brings with it many questions. Do we want to be able to choose what our babies will look like, or pick the best person for a job with DNA tests?



The invention of Google

'How many common English words were invented by Shakespeare?'

How long did it take people to find the answer to this question 15 years ago? And now? You can google it and find the answer immediately!

Google is the most popular Internet search engine in the world. It was invented by two students, Larry Page and Sergey Brin. They met in 1995, when they were both studying computer science at Stanford University, USA. They were also both fans of the science fiction TV programme Star Trek, and they loved the spaceship computer. They dreamed of producing something that could also answer any question in seconds.



Internet search engines at the time were slow and gave many websites that weren't useful. In

January 1996, Page and Brin decided to make a better and faster search engine. They thought the results should be based on the popularity of each website – the most popular ones have the highest number of 'weblinks' (links to other websites).

Nobody would give them money for their project, so they used their credit cards and bought as much computer memory as possible. They also borrowed money from family and friends. Then, in 1998, they were given a cheque for \$100,000, and they started their own company. Their first office was in a friend's garage! The company name Google comes from mathematics. A googol is a very high number – 1 followed by a hundred zeros.

The Google search engine was soon used by thousands of people worldwide because it was fast, easy and accurate. By 2002 it was the biggest search engine on the Internet. Now, more questions have been answered by Google than any other Internet service, from sport to science, and from music to medicine. Google hopes that in the future all the world's information will be put on the Internet, so that everybody can find everything.

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

The world's most common habit: chewing gum

- 1 Do you chew gum? How often? Stand up and ask the students in the class. Complete the chart below.

NUMBER OF STUDENTS WHO CHEW GUM	
... often	_____
... sometimes	_____
... rarely	_____
... never	_____

- 2 Discuss these questions as a class.

- Who often chews gum? Who never chews gum?
- When and where do you chew gum?
- Where do you put it when it has lost its flavour?

- 3 You are going to listen to a radio programme about chewing gum. Check the meaning of these words. Which have an obvious connection with the topic of chewing gum? How?

skeleton (n)	to freshen (the breath) (v)	tree sap (n)
honey (n)	to wrap (v)	packet (n)
to hire (v)	billboard (n) (Am. Eng.)	

- 4 Read the statements below. Do you think they are true (✓) or false (X)? Discuss with a partner.

- ☐ One million tons of gum is chewed every year.
- ☐ Chewing gum was invented in Sweden.
- ☐ Chewing gum was found in the mouth of a nine thousand-year-old skeleton.
- ☐ The first gum was made of tree sap and sugar.
- ☐ Babies are born wanting to chew gum.
- ☐ The ancient Greeks believed chewing gum was good for your health.
- ☐ South American Indians made the first packets of chewing gum.
- ☐ Chewing gum was taken to North America by the English.

T 11.5 Listen to part one of the programme and check your ideas. Correct the false sentences.

Helps you relax ...
enjoy **WRIGLEY'S**
refreshing delicious
Chewing
Gum!



Freshen
your
Taste!
Chew **WRIGLEY'S**
Helps brighten teeth - sweetens breath
Aids your digestion
Enjoy chewing daily
Keep a packet handy
Refreshing - Delicious!



- 5 **T 11.6** Listen to part two of the programme. Answer the questions.

- Who was William Wrigley?
- What did he do to advertise chewing gum?
- How much chewing gum was given away?
- How long was Wrigley's longest billboard?
- What is today's chewing gum made of?

What do you think?

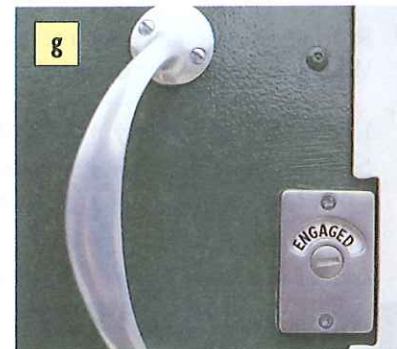
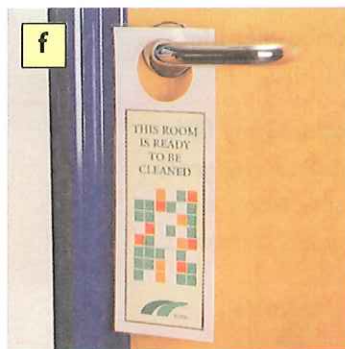
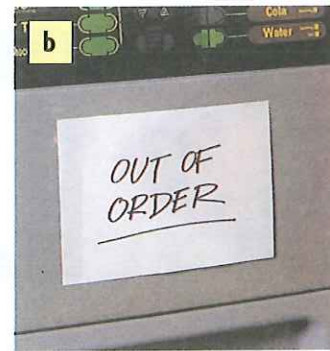
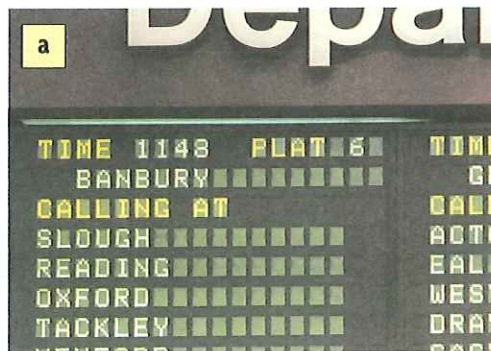
- Is chewing gum a common habit in your country?
- Is it considered a bad habit? Why/Why not?
- Is chewing gum good for you? Why/Why not?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Notices

- 1 When you first go to a foreign country, it can be difficult to understand notices. Here are some typical English notices. Match them with these places.

- 1 ☒ a bank or a post office
- 2 ☐ a petrol station
- 3 ☐ a broken drinks machine
- 4 ☐ a road in a town
- 5 ☐ an airport
- 6 ☐ the Underground
- 7 ☐ a park
- 8 ☐ a zoo
- 9 ☐ a hotel
- 10 ☐ a railway station
- 11 ☐ a public toilet
- 12 ☐ a motorway



- 2 **T 11.7** Listen to four conversations. Where are the people?
- 3 Work with a partner. Choose two other places, and write conversations that could happen there. Read them to the class, and see if they can guess the place.





12 Dreams and reality

Second conditional • *might* • Phrasal verbs • Social expressions 2

STARTER



- 1 Which famous person would you like to meet? What would you talk about?
- 2 Which country would you like to visit? What would you do there?
- 3 If you won a lot of money, what would you buy? How much would you give to friends?

SWEET DREAMS

Second conditional

- 1 Read about Nicola. Which text describes her life? Which describes her dreams?

I live in a flat with my mum and dad and my little brother. My mum works in a hospital, so my gran often looks after us and she helps my mum. I go to St Barnabas School and I wear a green uniform. I can only have sweets at the weekend.

Nicola, aged 7



- 2 Complete the text on the right with these words.

horse sweets palace dress teacher servants

T 12.1 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

If I were a princess, I'd live in a _____. I'd have _____ to look after me. My mum would be Queen, and she wouldn't work. I wouldn't go to school. I'd have a private _____. I'd ride a white _____, and I'd wear a long _____. I could have all the _____ I wanted.





GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 What tense describes Nicola's real life?
- 2 *If I lived in a palace, ...*
Does she live in a palace? What tense is *lived*?
... *I'd have servants.* (I'd = I would)
Is this a dream or reality?
- 3 Complete the rule.
We make unreal conditional clauses with *if* + the _____ tense.
In the result clause, we use the auxiliary verb _____ + the infinitive.
- 4 Notice that *was* can change to *were* in the condition clause.
If I were a princess, ...

► Grammar Reference 12.1 p141

- 3 Look at the questions and short answers.

Where would she live?

In a palace.

Would her grandmother look after her?

No, she wouldn't. She'd have servants.

Ask and answer questions about Nicola's dreams with a partner.

- What ... her mother do?
- ... work?
- ... Nicola go to school?
- What pet ... have?
- What ... wear?
- ... have a lot of sweets?

PRACTICE

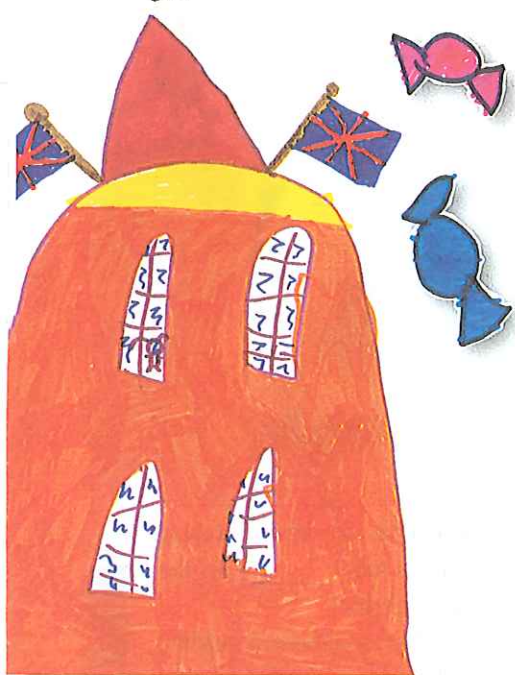
Discussing grammar

- 1 Make sentences from the chart.

If I found were knew had didn't eat didn't smoke	cakes and ice-cream, the answer, a car, taller, so much, a lot of money, president, some money in the street,	I'd I wouldn't	feel better. play basketball. lose weight. buy a big house. build more hospitals. keep it. tell you. give you a lift.
---	---	------------------------------	---

- 2 Put the verbs in the correct form.

- 1 If I _____ (be) rich, I _____ (travel) round the world. First I _____ (go) to Singapore, then I _____ (go) to China.
- 2 If he _____ (work) harder, he _____ (have) more money.
- 3 I _____ (go) to work if I _____ (feel) better, but I feel terrible.
- 4 If I _____ (can) speak perfect English, I _____ (not be) in this classroom.
- 5 'What _____ you _____ (do) if a stranger _____ (give) you £1 million?'



What would you do?

- 3 Discuss what you would do if ...
- you came home and found a burglar.
 - someone gave you a present that you really didn't like.
 - you saw someone shoplifting.
 - you found a wallet with a lot of money in it.
 - you saw two people fighting in the street.

If I were you ...

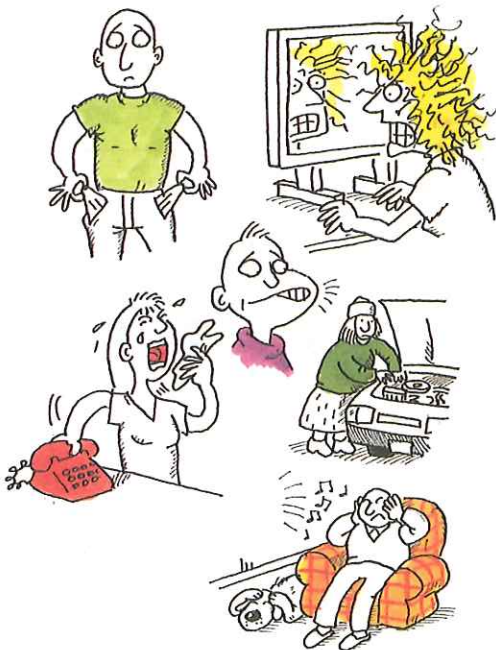
- 4 **T 12.2** We can give advice using *If I were you, I'd ...*

I feel terrible! My head hurts, and I feel dizzy.

If I were you, I'd go to bed.

Work with a partner. Give the people advice about their problems.

- 1 I have no money.
- 2 My hair's awful.
- 3 I've got toothache.
- 4 I've had a row with my best friend.
- 5 My car won't start in the morning.
- 6 My neighbours make a lot of noise.



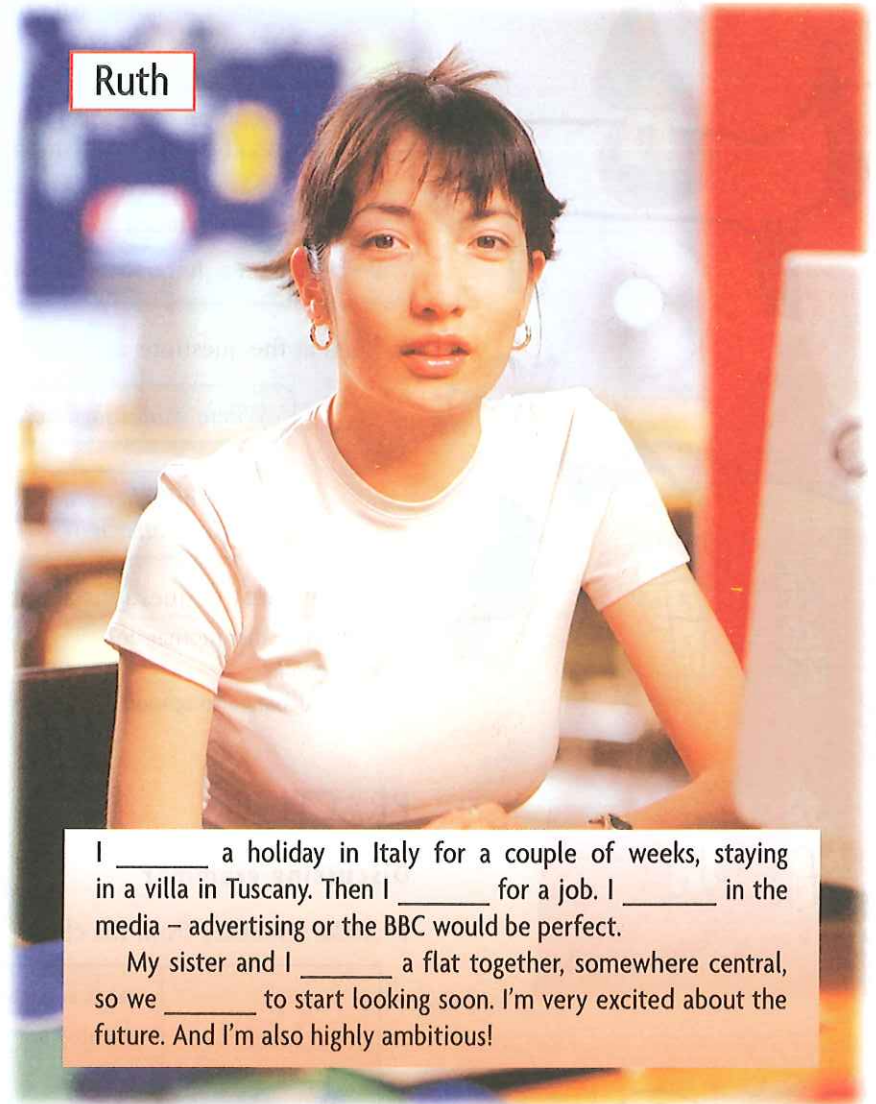
T 12.3 Listen and compare your answers.

WHO KNOWS?

might

- 1 **T 12.4** Listen to two students saying what they're going to do when they leave university. Complete the texts.

Ruth



I _____ a holiday in Italy for a couple of weeks, staying in a villa in Tuscany. Then I _____ for a job. I _____ in the media – advertising or the BBC would be perfect.

My sister and I _____ a flat together, somewhere central, so we _____ to start looking soon. I'm very excited about the future. And I'm also highly ambitious!

- 2 What are some of the certainties in Ruth's life?

She's having a holiday in Italy.

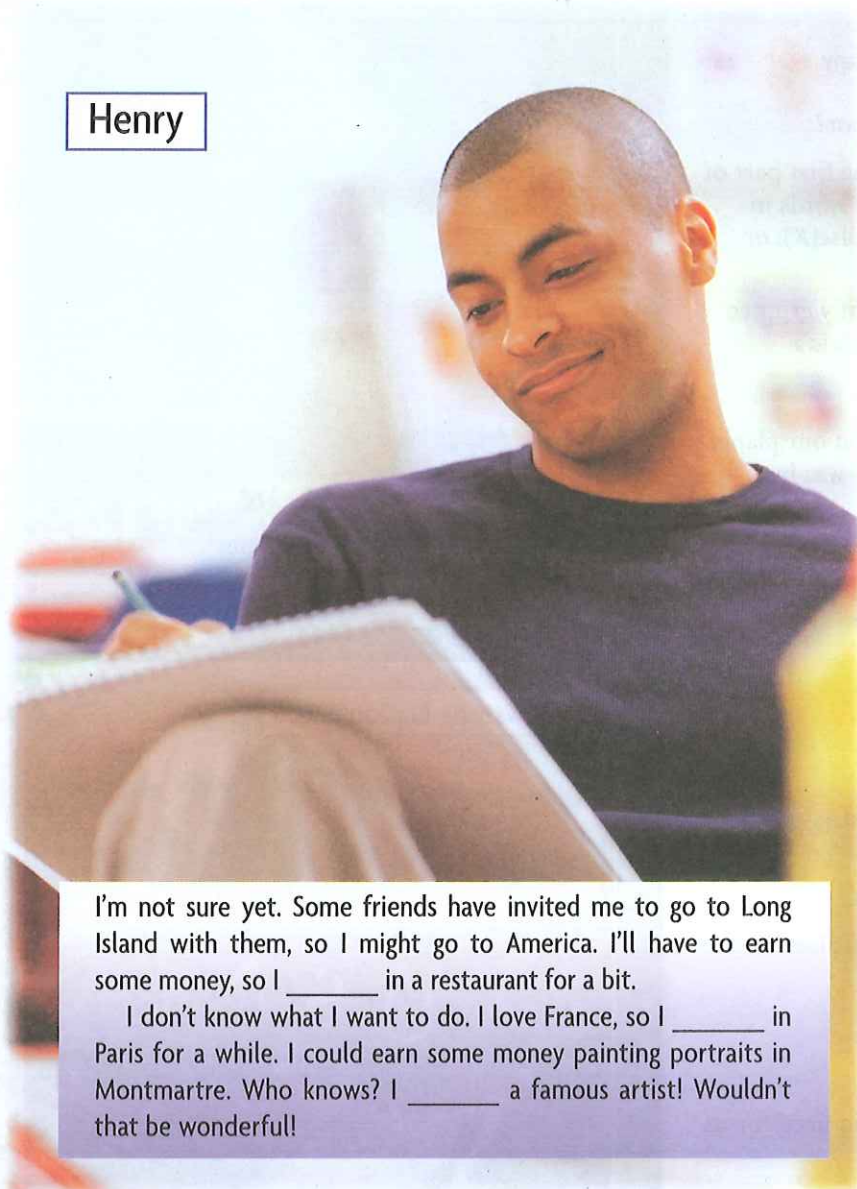
- ... villa in Tuscany.
- ... for a job.
- ... flat together.
- ... start looking soon.

- 3 What are some of the possibilities in Henry's life?

He might go to America.

- ... restaurant for a bit.
- ... Paris for a while.
- ... famous artist.

Henry



I'm not sure yet. Some friends have invited me to go to Long Island with them, so I might go to America. I'll have to earn some money, so I _____ in a restaurant for a bit.

I don't know what I want to do. I love France, so I _____ in Paris for a while. I could earn some money painting portraits in Montmartre. Who knows? I _____ a famous artist! Wouldn't that be wonderful!

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 *Might* means the same as *perhaps ... will ...*.
What are you doing tonight?
I don't know. I might go out, or I might stay at home.
- 2 *Might* is a modal auxiliary.
Ann might come round tonight.
I might not pass my exams.
Do we add -s with *he/she/it*?
Do we use *do/does* in the negative?

►► Grammar Reference 12.2 p141

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

- 1 Choose the correct verb in these sentences.
 - 1 'What's for supper?' 'We're *having* / we *might have* lamb. It's in the oven.'
 - 2 'What time are we eating?' 'Don't worry. It'll *be* / it *might be* ready before your TV programme.'
 - 3 'Who's eating with us?' 'I've invited Jerry, but he'll *be* / he *might be* late. It depends on the traffic.'
 - 4 I'm going into town tomorrow. I'm *having* / I *might have* lunch with Jo at 1.00.
 - 5 'Are you going to have a winter holiday this year?' 'I *am* / I *might*. I haven't decided yet.'

Possibilities

- 2 Make conversations with a partner about these future possibilities. One of you isn't sure about anything.

What are you doing this evening?

I'm not sure. I might go out or I might stay at home.

- 1 What sort/car/buy?
Fiat/Toyota
- 2 Where/on holiday?
Turkey/Jordan
- 3 What/have to eat?
steak/fish
- 4 Who/help you fix your computer?
ask Kamal/ask Aziz

- 3 Ask and answer questions with a partner about your possible future plans:
 - after the lesson • at the weekend
 - tomorrow evening • for your next holiday

Check it

- 4 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.
 - 1 If I'd have a car, I'd give you a lift.
 - 2 They'll call their baby Lily, but they aren't sure yet.
 - 3 I'd visit you more often if you wouldn't live so far away.
 - 4 I'm playing tennis tomorrow. I'm not sure.
 - 5 If I'm younger, I'll learn to play the piano, but I'm too old now.

READING AND SPEAKING

Supervolcano

- 1 Discuss these questions as a class.
 - What famous volcanoes are there in the world? How many can you name?
 - Are they active or extinct? What do you know about them?
- 2 What do you think a 'supervolcano' is? Read the first part of the article about them. Check the **highlighted** words in your dictionary. Mark the sentences true(✓), false(X), or don't know (?).
 - 1 A supervolcano is a volcano which has recently erupted.
 - 2 Not many people know that Yellowstone Park is a supervolcano.
 - 3 Yellowstone Park is an extinct supervolcano.
 - 4 About 40 supervolcanoes have been found on our planet.
 - 5 The most recent eruption of a supervolcano was in Yellowstone Park.
 - 6 It is unlikely that another supervolcano will erupt.
- 3 Read the second part of the article. Check the **highlighted** words, and put these events in the correct order.

If Yellowstone volcano erupted, ...

 - 1 ☐ there would be no summer in Europe.
 - 2 ☐ 87,000 people would die immediately.
 - 3 ☐ the tropical forests would die.
 - 4 ☐ Iceland might start to help feed the world.
 - 5 ☐ warmer countries would have famines.
 - 6 ☐ only 10% of our sunlight would reach the earth.

Check the answers in class, and then read them aloud to a partner.

If Yellowstone ... , then ...

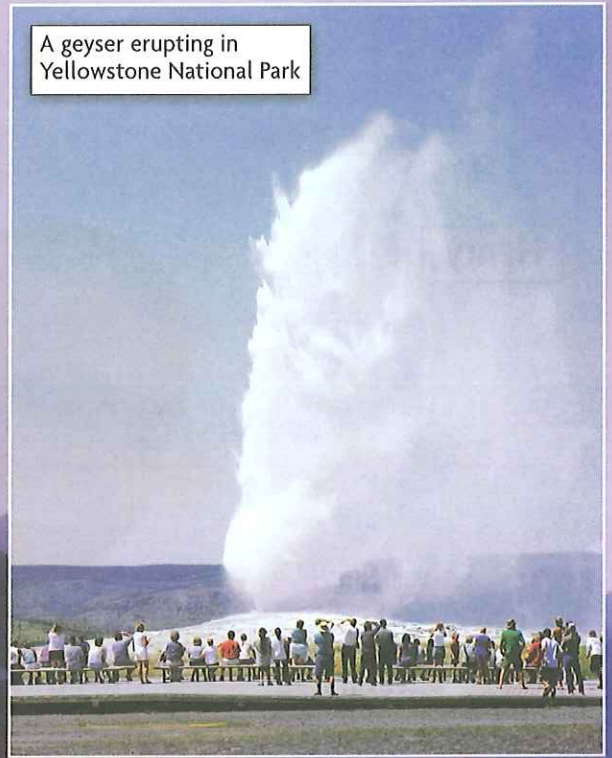
- 4 Read the last part of the article. Why is there no need for us to worry?
- 5 What do these numbers refer to in the article?

3 million	1960s	9,000	40	74,000
640,000	250kmph	87,000	¾	90%

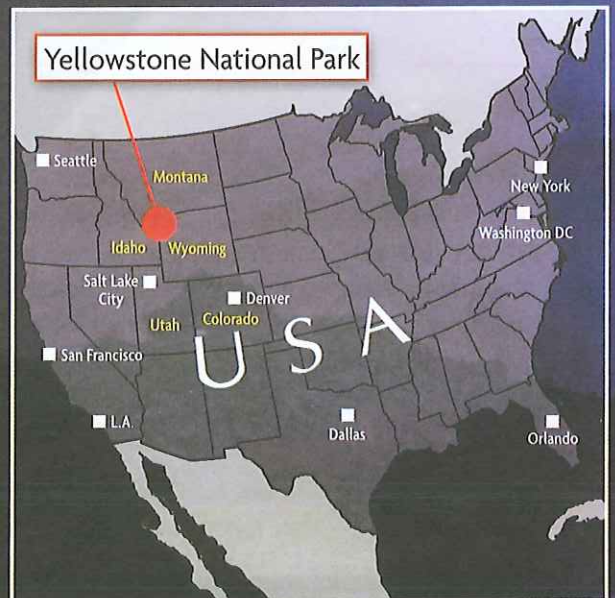
What do you think?

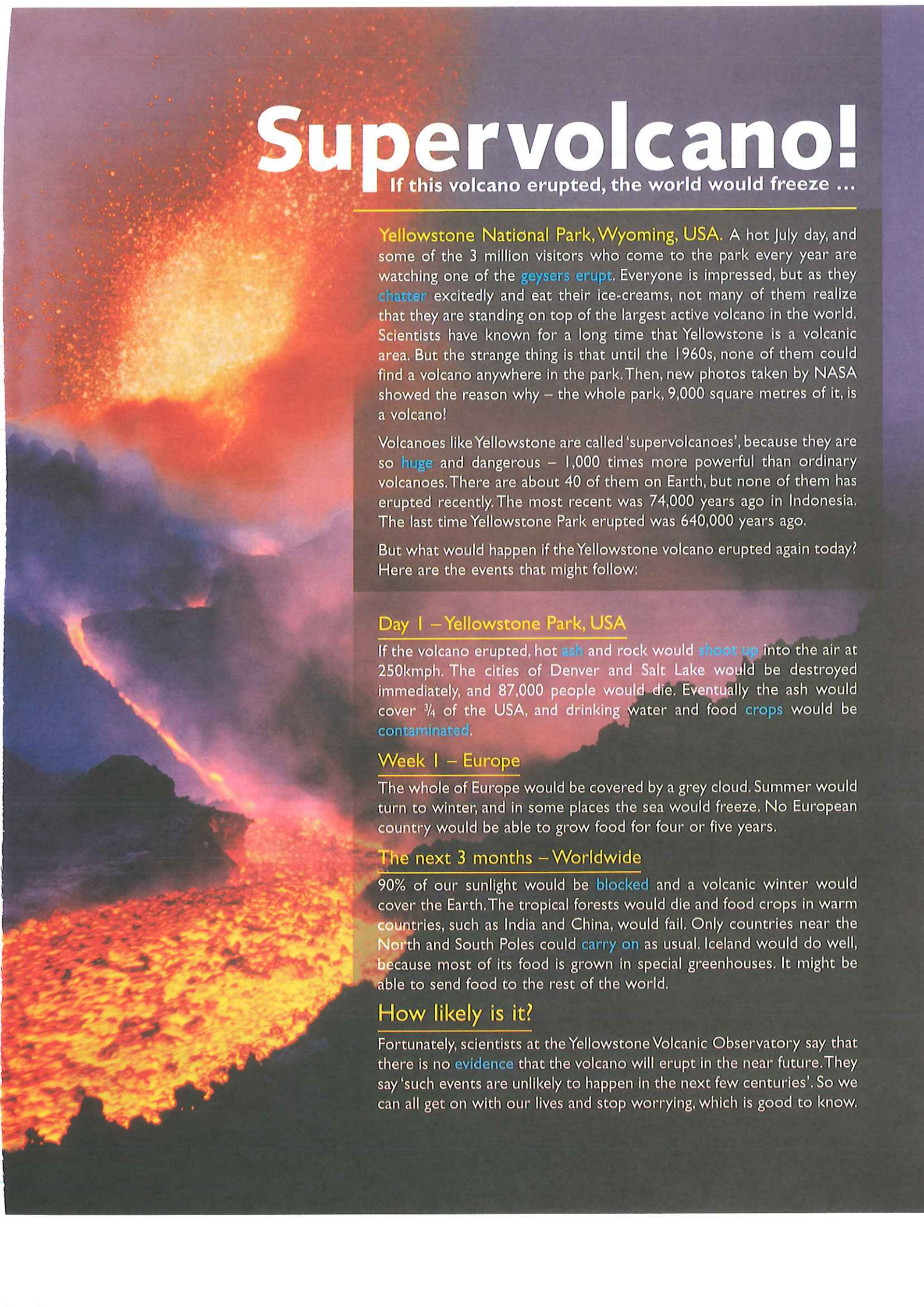
- Where do you think there might be other volcanic eruptions in the future?
- Do you think scientists will one day find ways of stopping these disasters? How best could they help us?
- If an eruption did happen, what do you think you could do to try and survive? Work in groups, and think about food, housing, heating, and clothing. Tell the class.

A geyser erupting in Yellowstone National Park



Yellowstone National Park





Supervolcano!

If this volcano erupted, the world would freeze ...

Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming, USA. A hot July day, and some of the 3 million visitors who come to the park every year are watching one of the **geysers erupt**. Everyone is impressed, but as they **chatter** excitedly and eat their ice-creams, not many of them realize that they are standing on top of the largest active volcano in the world. Scientists have known for a long time that Yellowstone is a volcanic area. But the strange thing is that until the 1960s, none of them could find a volcano anywhere in the park. Then, new photos taken by NASA showed the reason why – the whole park, 9,000 square metres of it, is a volcano!

Volcanoes like Yellowstone are called 'supervolcanoes', because they are so **huge** and dangerous – 1,000 times more powerful than ordinary volcanoes. There are about 40 of them on Earth, but none of them has erupted recently. The most recent was 74,000 years ago in Indonesia. The last time Yellowstone Park erupted was 640,000 years ago.

But what would happen if the Yellowstone volcano erupted again today? Here are the events that might follow:

Day 1 – Yellowstone Park, USA

If the volcano erupted, hot **ash** and rock would **shoot up** into the air at 250kmph. The cities of Denver and Salt Lake would be destroyed immediately, and 87,000 people would die. Eventually the ash would cover $\frac{3}{4}$ of the USA, and drinking water and food **crops** would be **contaminated**.

Week 1 – Europe

The whole of Europe would be covered by a grey cloud. Summer would turn to winter, and in some places the sea would freeze. No European country would be able to grow food for four or five years.

The next 3 months – Worldwide

90% of our sunlight would be **blocked** and a volcanic winter would cover the Earth. The tropical forests would die and food crops in warm countries, such as India and China, would fail. Only countries near the North and South Poles could **carry on** as usual. Iceland would do well, because most of its food is grown in special greenhouses. It might be able to send food to the rest of the world.

How likely is it?

Fortunately, scientists at the Yellowstone Volcanic Observatory say that there is no **evidence** that the volcano will erupt in the near future. They say 'such events are unlikely to happen in the next few centuries'. So we can all get on with our lives and stop worrying, which is good to know.

VOCABULARY

Phrasal verbs

- 1 Phrasal verbs consist of a verb + adverb/preposition. Some phrasal verbs are literal.

Go away and leave me alone.

Take off your coat and come and sit down.

Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

out (x2) up on back

- Put _____ something warm. It's cold today.
- There's some ice-cream in the freezer. Can you get it _____?
- Why are your clothes on the floor? Please pick them _____.
- I'm going to take the kids _____ for the day.
- When are you going _____ to your country?

Do or mime these actions.

turn round walk out try something on throw something away
look for something turn something off fall over lie down

- 2 Some phrasal verbs aren't literal.

'Can you sort out this problem?' The plane took off. I gave up my job.

Do or mime these actions.

look after a baby put out a cigarette look up a word
we've run out of milk my car broke down Look out! fill in a form

- 3 Look at the position of the object when it is a pronoun in these sentences.

Your shoes are dirty. Take them off. This sweater looks nice. Can I try it on?

Complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from exercises 1-2. Use pronouns.

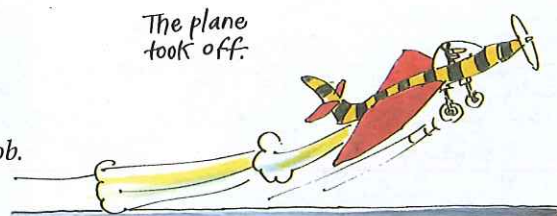
- 'Where's my tea?' 'Sorry. I threw _____. It was cold.'
- You shouldn't smoke in here. Put _____.
- We don't need all these lights on. Turn _____.
- Leave little Annie with me. I'll look _____.
- I haven't got time to fill in this form. I'll fill _____ later.

- 4 Complete the sentences with one of these phrasal verbs in the correct form.

grow up run out of fall out with get on with look forward to

- How do you _____ your parents?
- Do you ever _____ your brothers and sisters?
- What are you _____ doing on holiday?
- Have you ever _____ petrol in your car?
- Where did you _____? Or have you always lived here?

In pairs, ask and answer the questions about you.



Social expressions 2

Complete the conversations with the correct expressions.

I'm sorry Excuse me of course Pardon

- 1 A _____! Can I get past?
 B _____?
 A Can I get past, please?
 B _____. I didn't hear you. Yes, _____.
 A Thanks a lot.

That's right Oh, what a pity Congratulations Never mind I hear

- 2 A _____ you're going to get married soon. _____!
 B _____, next July. July 21. Can you come to the wedding?
 A _____! That's when we're away on holiday.
 C _____. We'll send you some wedding cake.
 A That's very kind.

Hurry up all right Oh, dear Just a minute I haven't a clue

- 3 A _____! Look at the time! _____, or we'll miss the train.
 B _____! I can't find my umbrella. Do you know where it is?
 A _____. But you won't need it. It's a lovely day. Just look at the sky!
 B Oh, _____. Let's go, then.

Good luck See you later Same to you Good idea What about you
 No, of course not

- 4 A _____ in your exam!
 B _____. I hope we both pass.
 A Did you go out last night?
 B _____. I went to bed early. _____?
 A Me, too. _____, after the exam. Let's go for a pizza.
 B _____.



T 12.5 Listen and check. Practise the conversations with a partner.

Listen to your teacher. Reply using one of the expressions.



13 Earning a living

Present Perfect Continuous • Word formation • Adverbs • Telephoning

STARTER



- 1 Ask and answer these questions.
- 2 Ask your teacher the same questions about *teaching* English.

How long have you been learning English?

When did you start?

STREET LIFE

Present Perfect Continuous

- 1 Read Andy's story.
- 2 Match the questions a–f on p103 with the answers in the text.
T 13.1 Listen and check. Finish Andy's answer in question 4.
- 3 With a partner, cover the questions and practise the conversation. Then cover the answers, and practise again.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 Which are the questions in the Present Perfect Continuous? What are the other tenses?
- 2 Look at these two questions.
How long have you been selling *The Big Issue*?
How many copies have you sold today?
Which question asks about the activity of selling?
Which question asks about the number of magazines sold?
- 3 Complete these sentences with the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous.
I _____ (smoke) since I was 16.
I _____ (smoke) five cigarettes today.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 13.1 p142

STREET LIFE

ANDY'S STORY

Andy, 28, from Scotland, used to have his own taxi business. When he lost it, he also lost his home and his family. He now sleeps on the streets in London. *The Big Issue* is a magazine sold by homeless people in Britain. This gives them a small income, so they can begin to find somewhere to live.



- 1 ☐ _____?

For a year. It was very cold at first, but you get used to it.

- 2 ☐ _____?

I came here to look for work, and I never left.

- 3 ☐ _____?

For six months. I'm in Covent Garden seven days a week selling the magazine.

- 4 ☐ _____?

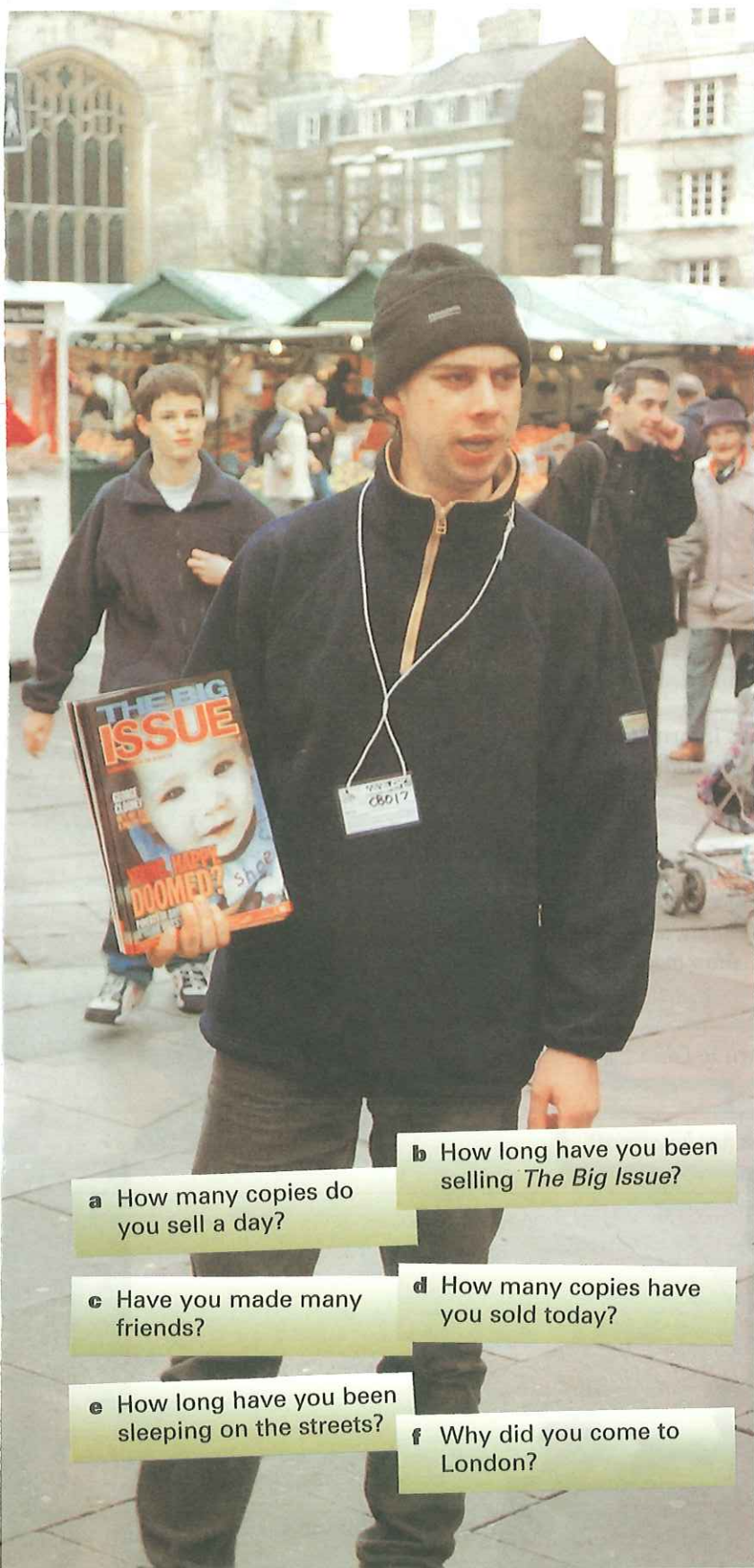
Lots. My problem is I'm homeless. I want a job, but I need somewhere to live before I can get a job. So I need money to get somewhere to live, but ...

- 5 ☐ _____?

Usually about fifty.

- 6 ☐ _____?

So far, ten. But it's still early.



a How many copies do you sell a day?

b How long have you been selling *The Big Issue*?

c Have you made many friends?

d How many copies have you sold today?

e How long have you been sleeping on the streets?

f Why did you come to London?

4 Make more questions about Andy.

- How long/trying to find a job?
- How many jobs/had?
- How long/standing here today?
- How/lose your business?
- Who/best friend?
- Where/meet him/her?
- How long/known each other?

T 13.2 Listen and check.

5 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Invent Andy's answers.

T 13.3 Listen and compare your answers.

PRACTICE

Discussing grammar

1 Choose the correct tense.

- 1 How long *have you been living* / *do you live* in Abu Dhabi?
- 2 Anna *has been finding* / *has found* a good job.
- 3 My brother and I *have gone* / *have been going* to karate lessons for over six months.
- 4 I *bought* / *have bought* a new flat a few months ago.
- 5 How long *have you had* / *have you been having* your car?
- 6 Tom *worked* / *has been working* as a policeman for the past month.
- 7 I've *written* / *ve been writing* an essay all day.
- 8 I've *written* / *been writing* six pages.

Talking about you

2 Put the verbs in the Present Perfect Simple or Continuous or the Past Simple.

- 1 How long _____ you _____ (come) to this university?
- 2 How long _____ you _____ (use) this book?
- 3 Which book _____ you _____ (have) before this one?
- 4 How long _____ you _____ (know) your teacher?

What have they been doing?

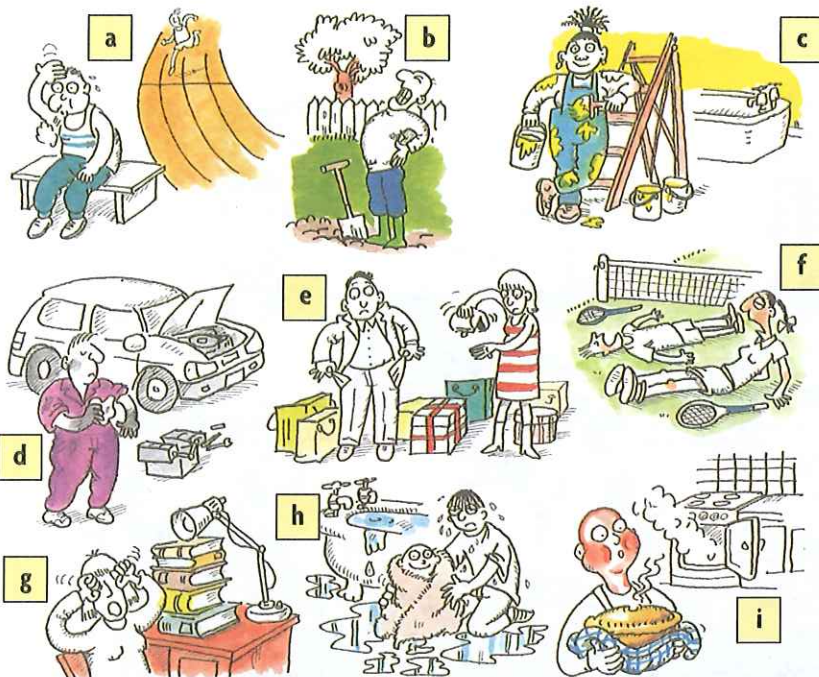
- 3 Make a sentence about the people using an idea from the box. Add *because* and say what they've been doing.

He's hot because he's been running.

hot back hurts paint on her clothes
dirty hands no money tired eyes hurt
wet red face

- 4 Complete these sentences in the Present Perfect Simple about some of the people in exercise 3.

- 1 He _____ (run) five miles.
- 2 They _____ (spend) all their money.
- 3 She _____ (read) five books today.
- 4 They _____ (play) six games.
- 5 He _____ (make) a cake and a pie.



Getting information

- 5 Work with a partner. Your teacher will give you different information about the life and career of Steven Spielberg, the movie director. Ask and answer questions to complete the information.

Student A

Steven Spielberg was born in . . . (Where?)
He is one of the most successful filmmakers of the late 20th century, and in his career he has earned millions of dollars.

Where was Steven Spielberg born?

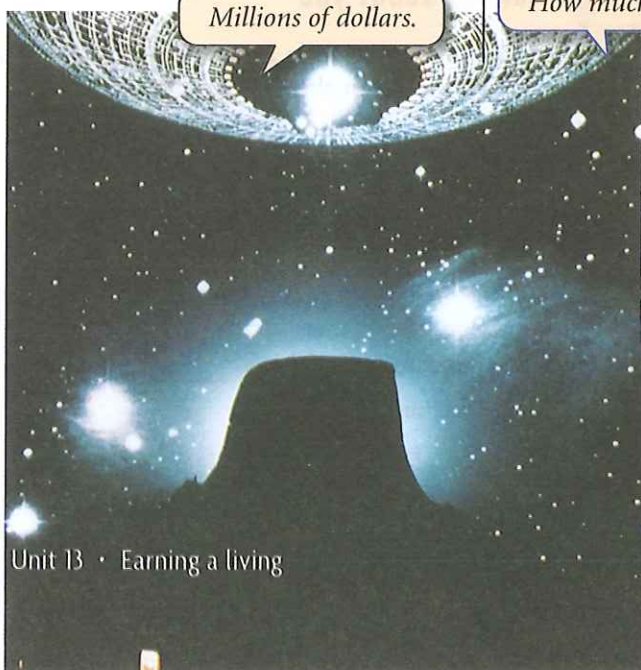
He was born in Ohio.

Millions of dollars.

How much has he earned?

Student B

Steven Spielberg was born in Ohio. He is one of the most successful filmmakers of the late 20th century, and in his career he has earned . . . (How much?)





VOCABULARY

Word formation

1 These words appeared in the last few units. Complete the charts and mark the stress.

Noun	Verb
death	<u>die</u>
waste	_____
_____	be'lieve
_____	'advertise
'promise	_____
_____	feel
ad'vice	_____
_____	de'scribe
in'vention	_____
'government	_____

Noun	Adjective
death	_____
_____	'honest
va'riety	_____
_____	mad
'mystery	_____
_____	'beautiful
_____	'wealthy
suc'cess	_____
_____	'comfortable
peace	_____

2 Complete the sentences with a word from exercise 1.

- _____ me that you'll phone when you arrive.
- He was taken to hospital by ambulance, but he was _____ on arrival.
- 'Are they _____?' 'Yes, they're millionaires.'
- 'Where does their money come from?' 'They have a very _____ business.'
- I love the _____ and quiet of the countryside.
- I saw an _____ for a job as a waiter.
- The sofa was so _____ that I fell asleep.
- I gave the police a _____ of the man who attacked me.
- I had a few problems, but Adam gave me some good _____.
- I was sitting at home when suddenly I had a funny _____ that I wasn't alone.

Adverbs

1 Complete the sentences with the adverbs.

mainly possibly really nearly

- 'Are you going out?' '_____. I don't know yet.'
- The exam was _____ difficult. I couldn't do any of it.
- 'How old are you?' 'I'm _____ eight. It's my birthday next week.'
- I travel a lot in my job, _____ to Europe.

2 Complete the sentences with the adverbs.

seriously exactly carefully fluently

- I used to speak French _____, but I've forgotten it now.
- Please drive _____. The roads are so dangerous.
- I have _____ £3.52 to last until the end of the week.
- There was an accident, but fortunately no one was _____ injured.



READING AND SPEAKING

A funny way to earn a living

- 1 Play the alphabet game with jobs.
architect, accountant, ...
businessman, bookseller, ...
- 2 What is considered to be a good job in your country?
What's an average salary?
- 3 Look at the pictures and the headlines, and look at the three texts for ten seconds only. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Do they have regular jobs?
 - 2 Do they like their job?
 - 3 Each headline contains one of these words. What's the difference between them?

life lively living

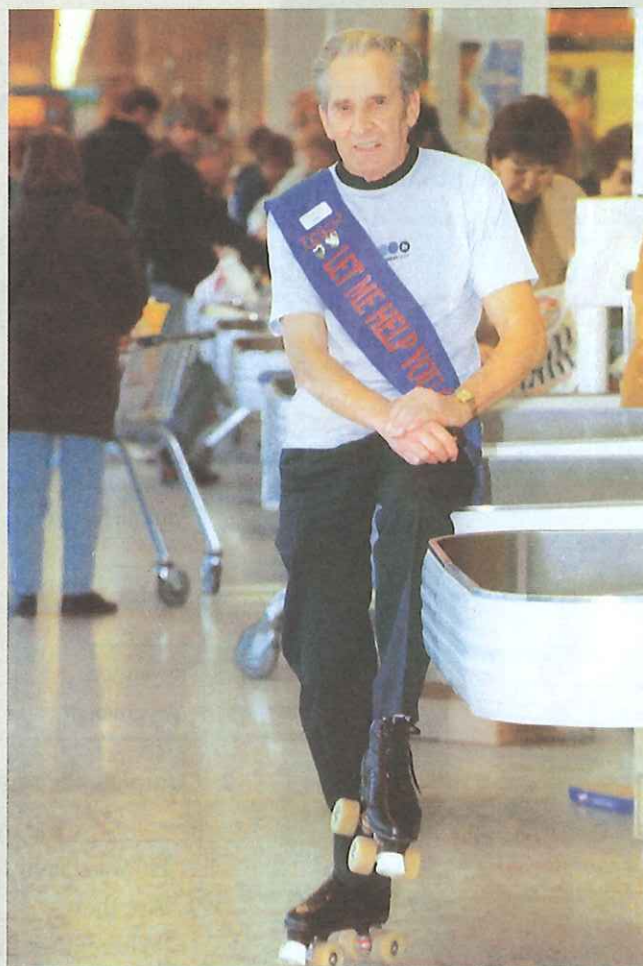
- 4 Choose one of the texts, and read it more carefully. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Does he/she work indoors or outdoors?
 - 2 How long has he/she been doing this job?
 - 3 What does he/she do in his/her job?
 - 4 What did he/she do before?
 - 5 Does he/she do the same thing every day?
 - 6 How much does he/she earn?
 - 7 Why does he/she like the job?
- 5 Find two partners who read the other two texts. Compare the three people. Now answer the questions.
 - 1 Who earns the most?
 - 2 Who earns the least?
 - 3 What sort of things has Terry found?
 - 4 Why do Tesco's employ older people?
 - 5 How long has Cathy been flying balloons?
 - 6 What is Terry's philosophy on life?
 - 7 Why didn't Tom phone when he saw the advertisement?
 - 8 How many hours a day does Cathy work?

What do you think?

What is your idea of the best and worst jobs in the world?

Language work

Find five adverbs that end in *-ly* in the text about the beachcomber on p107.



Lively Tom, 69, skates for Tesco

He gets paid for putting on his roller skates

Tom Hopperton is one of 1,200 over-65s working for the supermarket, Tesco. He's been working there for fifteen months. Before that he was a plumber for thirty years.

Tom skates about five miles a day around the store fetching things for customers who realize that they've forgotten something only when they've reached the checkout till. He earns £4.50 an hour.

'I just love the job. I help the customers, so they're usually very nice to me. I've always liked meeting people. And it keeps me fit. I can't sit at home doing nothing. I'd just die. I have to keep busy. Time goes really quickly. Every day is different.'

Tesco's made the decision to employ people of all ages. It sees the advantages of older workers who are more calm and authoritative when they are dealing with customers.

'When I saw this job advertised, I didn't believe they'd give it to me,' says Tom. 'I went in to see them because I thought they would be put off by my age if I just phoned. I wanted them to see that I am very lively for my age.'

Life on the beach

Is it possible to make a living from what you can find on the beach?



For 25 years Terry Cemm was a policeman, but for the last seventeen years he has been walking up and down five miles of beach every day, looking for things that might be useful to someone. Terry's a beachcomber.

Nearly everything in his cottage has come from the sea – chairs, tables, even tins of food. What's the most unusual thing he has ever found? 'A box containing 500 DVDs. That was nice,' he remembers. He finds lots of bottles with messages in them, mainly from children. They all get a reply if there's an address in the bottle. Shoes? 'If you find one, you'll find the other the next week,' he says.

But does he really make a living? 'Half a living,' he replies. I barter with a lot of things I find, and I have my police pension. But I don't actually need money. My life is rich in variety.'

Terry seems to be a very happy man. 'You have to find a way to live a simple, honest life. People spend all their lives chasing things they don't really need. There's so much waste.'

'Some people say I'm mad,' says Terry. 'But there are a lot more who'd like to do what I do. Look at me. I've got everything that I could possibly want.'



Flying for a living

Cathy has made a career out of her passion

Cathy Moorhead has only ever had one job. She has never wanted to do anything but be in a hot air balloon, going where the wind takes her, listening to the birds, and watching deer and small animals below her.

And she gets paid for it, about £25,000 a year. 'I've been flying balloons since I was 10, and I have done it professionally for twelve years. I fly between 10 and 20 passengers in different balloons.' The flights usually last an hour, and they go early in the morning or just before sunset. 'The trips are always mystery tours,' she says. 'I never know where we're going to land.'

She starts work about 6 am, and works anything from 15 hours a day to nothing, if the weather is bad. 'We can't fly if it's too windy, if visibility is poor, or if it's raining. The balloon gets too heavy and the passengers get wet.' What's the best thing about the job? 'The job itself. I love being out in the countryside and I hate routines. So this is heaven for me.'



LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Giving news

- 1 Craig has left home and has just started his first job in advertising. He's on the telephone to his mother.

T 13.4 Listen to his side of the conversation.

Work with a partner and decide if these statements are true (✓) or false (X).

- 1 Craig starts work at eight o'clock every morning.
 - 2 His mother is worried that he hasn't been eating well.
 - 3 He goes home immediately after work.
 - 4 Craig's mother has not heard about John before.
 - 5 Craig and John share a flat.
 - 6 John has been working for the advertising agency longer than Craig.
 - 7 Craig's father has been working in Holland.
 - 8 Craig's father has been working hard all day.
 - 9 His mother is coming to London next Thursday.
 - 10 Craig is going to cook a meal for his mother.
- 2 **T 13.4** Listen to Craig again. Your teacher will stop the recording. What do you think his mother said?
- 3 **T 13.5** Listen to the complete conversation and compare your ideas.

Language work

Read the tapescript on p127. Underline examples of the Present Perfect Simple and Continuous.

Roleplay

- 1 Read Craig's diary. Work with a partner. One of you is Craig. It's Friday evening and you have phoned your friend for a chat.

Hi, there. I'm exhausted. I've had a very busy week!

What have you been doing?

- 2 Work with a partner. It is Friday evening. One of you has decided to phone the other for a chat. Ask and answer questions about what you've been doing this week.



May

15 Monday

Five meetings today, then I cleaned the flat as Mum arrives tomorrow. I'm exhausted!

16 Tuesday

Good news - I got the pay rise I wanted. Went out for dinner with Mum to celebrate - now she knows that I eat well!

17 Wednesday

Mum left this morning. Another busy day at work.

Thursday 18

Work is crazy at the moment! No lunch. Went for a meal with John after work. Mum rang.

Friday 19

Had lunch with John. Worked late.

Saturday

Sunday

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Telephoning

- 1 Practise saying these telephone numbers.

020 7927 4863 01923 272994 0797 0800 994 633488
061 44 501277 07880 705024

T 13.6 Listen and check.

- 2 **T 13.7** Listen to some phone numbers in American English. What differences are there between British and American English?

- 3 **T 13.8** Listen to three phone conversations and decide:

- who is speaking to who.
- what about.
- how well they know each other.

- 1 Look at these telephone expressions.

Who's speaking?
Is that Ewan?
This is Sami./It's Sami.
(NOT ~~Here is~~ Sami, or ~~I'm~~ Sami.)

- 2 Complete these expressions from the telephone conversations.

Could I _____ Shereen?
I _____ he's out at the moment.
Can I take a _____?
I'll _____ later.

- 3 What do these mean?

Hold on. I'll connect you.
Speaking.

- 4 Look at the tapescript on p127/8.
Practise the conversations with a partner.

- 5 Your teacher will give you a role card.
Prepare what you are going to say
alone, then be ready to make a call or
answer the phone.



* SHIFT

□ NEXT

SPACE





14 Family ties

Past Perfect • Reported statements • Saying goodbye

STARTER



Match a line in A with a line in B.

A	B
John met Pete	every Thursday.
They were working in Paris	recently.
They've been good friends	for a long time.
They play tennis	in 1986.
They've been working together	when they met.

FAMILY REUNITED

Past Perfect

- 1 Look at the headline of a newspaper story.
What do you want to know when you read the story?
What happened forty years ago?
Where are their parents?
How did they meet?

Twins reunite after forty years

- 2 Look at two versions of the story. Read them and compare them. Did you find the answers to your questions?

A

Beth and David Taylor's mother died soon after their birth, and the twins didn't see each other for forty years.

They lived their whole lives with different families in different parts of the country. They both had cats called Tammy, they both studied languages at university, and they both married twice.

They found each other through a website called Family Reunited. They enjoyed an emotional reunion at David's house in Brighton last week, and spent the day swapping stories about their lives.

'I didn't know I had a twin,' said Beth, 'but I always felt half of me was missing.'

David said, 'I always knew about Beth, but I didn't know where she was.'

B

Beth Taylor and her long-lost twin brother, David, enjoyed an emotional reunion at David's house in Brighton last week.

Their mother had died soon after their birth, and they hadn't seen each other for forty years.

'I didn't know I had a twin,' said Beth, 'but I always felt half of me was missing.'

They found each other through a website called Family Reunited, and spent the day swapping stories about their lives.

David had always known about Beth. 'But I didn't know where she was,' he said.

They had lived their whole lives with different families in different parts of the country. They found that they had both had cats called Tammy, they had both studied languages at university, and that they had both been married twice.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- 1 In which text are the events of the story told in the order in which they happened? Which tense are all the verbs in this text?
- 2 How are these ideas expressed in text B?
Their mother died soon after their birth.
They didn't see each other for forty years.
 Which two tenses are used in text B?
- 3 What's the difference between these sentences?
 When we arrived, they were leaving.
 they left.
 they had already left.

►► Grammar Reference 14.1 p142

- 3 **T 14.1** Read and listen to text B on p110, and underline all the examples of the Past Perfect. Read the text aloud, and be careful with contracted forms.
- 4 Correct these sentences.
 - 1 Beth and David hadn't seen each other for a couple of weeks.
 - 2 They didn't live together because their mother had divorced.
 - 3 David had never known he had a sister.
 - 4 They'd both studied chemistry.



PRACTICE

Speaking

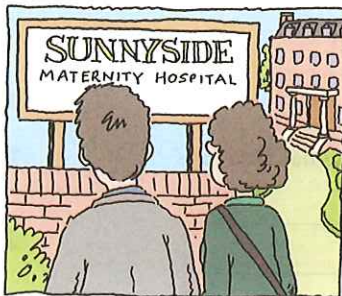
- 1 Work in pairs. Look what Beth and David did after they met. Tell the story.



They spoke ... hours
... phone.



They sent ...



They visited ... where they
were born.



They met ...

- 2 Which of these sentences is true? Explain why.

When they met	they were swapping photos.
at Beth's house,	they swapped photos.
	they had already swapped photos.

- 3 Tell the story again, but begin at picture 4.
When Beth and David met again at Beth's house, they had ...
- 4 Write a similar newspaper article to B on page 110. Use these notes to help you.
 Jane Williams / long-lost sister Amy / meet each other / Carlton Hotel yesterday.
 Parents disappear / hurricane / on holiday in the Caribbean / not see each other 15 years.
 Find each other through friends / live in the same town / study at the same university / go shopping in the same mall / but never meet.

Grammar and pronunciation

5 Make sentences from the chart below.

I	was wet		I	had	fallen over playing football.
Our teacher	hurt				done the homework.
My leg	died				passed all my exams.
The plants	was delighted	because	I		had rain the night before.
The road	was angry		we		forgotten to water them.
	was hungry			hadn't	had a busy day.
	went to bed early				had any breakfast.

T 14.2 Listen and check. Practice saying the sentences.

WHAT DID SHE SAY?

Reported statements

1 **T 14.3** Listen and complete what Ben says about John in A.

A What does Ben say?
'I _____ John very much.'
'I _____ him at university.'
'We _____ quite similar.'
'We _____ a lot together.'
'I _____ John this evening.'
'I _____ him to arrange a time.'

2 **T 14.4** Read and listen to B.

B What did Ben tell you?
He told me/said that ...
he liked John very much.
he'd (<i>had</i>) met him at university.
they were quite similar.
they'd (<i>had</i>) travelled a lot together.
he was seeing John this evening.
he'd (<i>would</i>) phone him to arrange a time.

3 Practise the sentences in 2. Be careful with contracted forms.

GRAMMAR SPOT

- A is direct speech. B is reported speech. What are the tense changes from direct to reported speech?
- How are *say* and *tell* used to introduce reported speech?

► Grammar Reference 14.2 p142

PRACTICE

An interview

- T 14.5** Listen to an interview with Beth Taylor, the woman you read about on p110.
- Complete the report of the interview with the correct verb forms.

In an interview, Beth Taylor said that she (1) *had* never known about David, but she (2) _____ pleased that she (3) _____ him now. They (4) _____ each other for the first time a few weeks ago, and they had found they (5) _____ a lot in common. She told me she (6) _____ married twice, and that she now (7) _____ in Oxford with her husband, Bruce, who (8) _____ a photographer.

She said that David (9) _____ to see her next week, and he was bringing his three children. She was sure they (10) _____ on well with her children.

T 14.6 Listen and check.

Check it

- Report these statements.
 - 'I like Anna,' said Jim.
 - 'I'm staying with my aunt,' said Anna.
 - 'Mr Walker phoned before lunch,' Sue said. 'He didn't leave a message,' she added.
 - 'I don't think it'll rain,' said Ken.
 - 'Ken's gone home,' Sue said. 'He went early,' she added.
 - 'I'll ring you this evening,' Anna told Jim.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

Hot verbs – *bring, take, come, go*

- 1 The verbs *bring, take, come*, and *go* are very common in English. Look at these examples.

David's **coming** to see me next week.

He's **bringing** his children.

I **went** to the USA last year.

I **took** my nephews and nieces.

- 2 Underline the examples of the verbs in these questions. Ask and answer them with a partner.

1 What did you bring with you to school today?

2 When you are invited to a friend's house, do you usually take something?

3 Who comes to visit you at home most often?

4 Where do you usually go after school?

- 3 The choice between *bring / take* and *come / go* depends on where the speaker is. Look at the picture.



The speaker uses *take* and *go* for a movement away from her.

The speaker uses *bring* and *come* for a movement towards him.

- 4 Complete the conversations with *bring, take, come*, and *go* in the correct form.

1 A Goodbye, everyone! I'm _____ on holiday tomorrow.

B Where are you _____?

A Australia. I'm _____ my family to visit their cousins in Sydney.

B Lucky you! When you _____ back, _____ me a T-shirt!

2 A Listen, class! Please finish your work before you _____ home. And tomorrow, don't forget to _____ in your money for the school trip. We're _____ to the Natural History Museum.

B Oh, Miss Jones! Can't you _____ us somewhere more exciting?

3 A Martin, you were very late last night. What time did you _____ home?

B It was before midnight, Mum, honest. Mick _____ me home in his car.

4 A I've been decorating my new flat. You must _____ and visit me on Saturday. And _____ Emma and Jane with you. I'll cook you a meal.

B Great! We'll _____ some ice-cream for dessert!

5 (In London)

A I'll miss you when I _____ back home to Morocco. You must _____ and visit me next year.

B I'd love to! I want you to _____ this photo with you. It will remind you of the day we _____ to Oxford together.

A OK. And when you visit, _____ me some more English books to read!

6 (In Turkey)

A I'm _____ to London tomorrow, so tonight my best friend is _____ round to my house to say goodbye. She's _____ a present she wants me to _____ to her sister in London.

B Well, have a good trip!

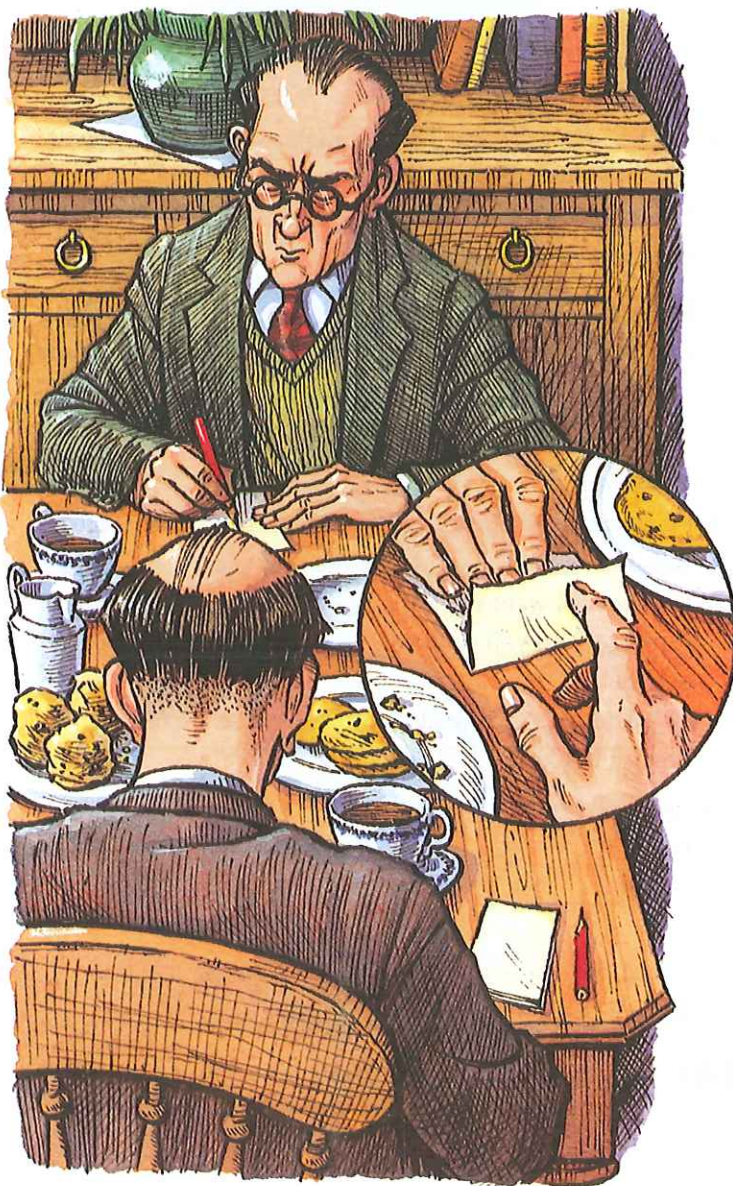
T 14.7 Listen and check your answers.

READING AND SPEAKING

The tale of two silent brothers

- 1 Sometimes in families there are arguments and family members don't speak to each other for a long time. Has this ever happened to anyone you know?
- 2 You are going to read about two brothers who didn't speak to each other for many years. These expressions are in the text. Match the verbs and phrases.

get	a bachelor all his life
make	a coin
have	revenge
see	a will
remain	a quarrel
toss	and make up
kiss	a solicitor about something



- 3 Read the first part of the story.

PART ONE | A death in the family

There were once two brothers, John and Robert Hessian. John was 52 years old, Robert 49. They had never married and they lived together in a house in Oldcastle in the north of England. They lived together, they ate meals together but they never spoke a single word to each other. They hadn't spoken to each other for ten years, ever since they had had a quarrel. Whenever they wanted to communicate they wrote notes.



One evening the brothers were sitting together after supper. They were both wearing black because their older sister, Mary, had recently died. John wrote a note to Robert: *Mr Liversage is coming to visit.* (Mr Liversage was their solicitor.) Robert wrote: *Why?*

John wrote: *I don't know. He phoned and said that he wanted to see us.*

At that moment there was a knock at the door. It was the solicitor, Mr Powell Liversage. He had been to school with the brothers and was an old friend. He too was unmarried.

'How are you, Powell?' asked Robert.

'Very well,' he replied. 'I've come to tell you about your sister's will. Did you know that she had left a will?'

'No,' answered John and Robert together. 'How much did she leave?'

'£12,000. But let me read you the will.'



What do you think?

Discuss these questions with a partner before you read part two.

Why do you think the brothers quarrelled? Do you think they quarrelled about:

- money?
- the house?
- a woman?

What do you think is in the will? Do you think:

- the sister leaves the brothers £6,000 each?
- she leaves all the money to one brother? Which one?
- she leaves them the money on certain conditions? What conditions?

4 Read part two and find out if your ideas are correct.

PART TWO | The will

Mr Liversage took the will out of his pocket and began to read.

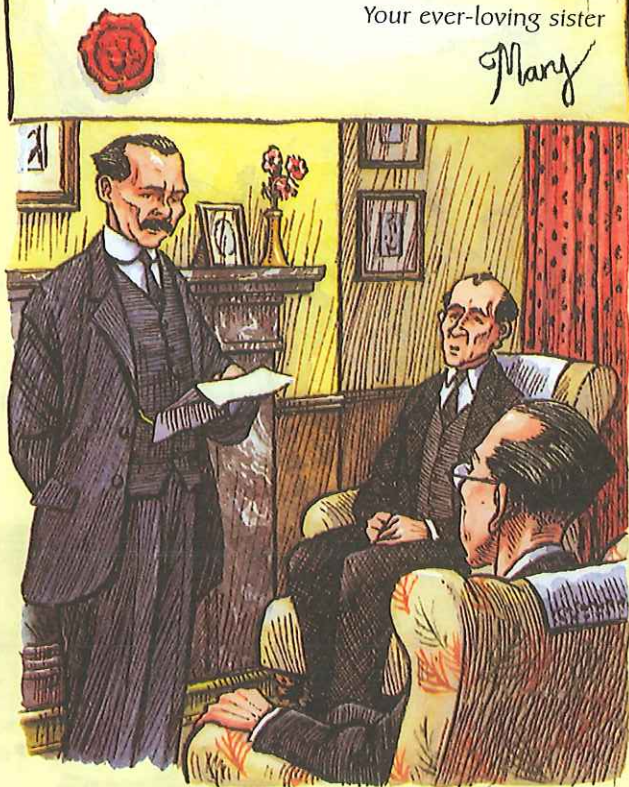
Last Will and Testament of Mary Hessian

To my dear brothers John and Robert:

You have both behaved very stupidly. I have never understood why you quarrelled about Annie Emery. You have been cruel and unfair to poor Annie. She has waited ten years for one of you. So, John, if you marry Annie, I'll give all my money to you. And Robert, if you marry her, I'll give it to you. And, if neither of you marries her, all my money will go to Annie, herself.

Your ever-loving sister

Mary



What do you think?

Discuss these questions as a class before you read part three.

- What do you think will happen?
- What will John and Robert do?
- Who will marry Annie?

5 Read part three and find out if your ideas are correct.

PART THREE | To marry or not to marry?

The two brothers sat and thought for a long time. Ten years ago when Annie was a young woman of 27, both John and Robert had been in love with her. They had had a violent quarrel and some terrible things were said. Afterwards they had both wanted to make up and be friends again but by this time they had stopped speaking to each other, so neither of them learned that the other had decided not to marry Annie.

At two o'clock in the morning John spoke: 'Why don't we toss a coin for Annie? Heads or tails?'

'Tails,' said Robert. But it was heads. The next evening John went round to Annie's house. Powell Liversage was just leaving when he arrived.



So in the end neither brother married Annie. They are still bachelors to this day, but at least they are now talking to each other again. And Annie? Well, she got her revenge and now she's very happily married.

ADAPTED FROM A STORY BY ARNOLD BENNET

What do you think?

Discuss these questions with a partner. Then tell the class your ideas.

- What happened when John went to Annie's house?
- Why didn't Annie marry either brother?
- Who did she marry?
- Who got the money?

Your teacher will tell you what actually happened.

Language work

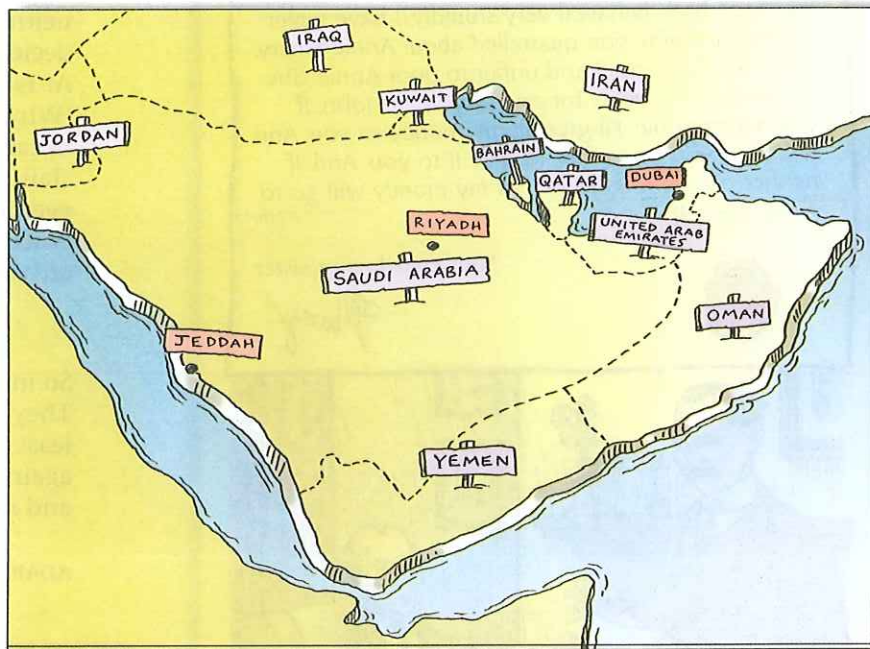
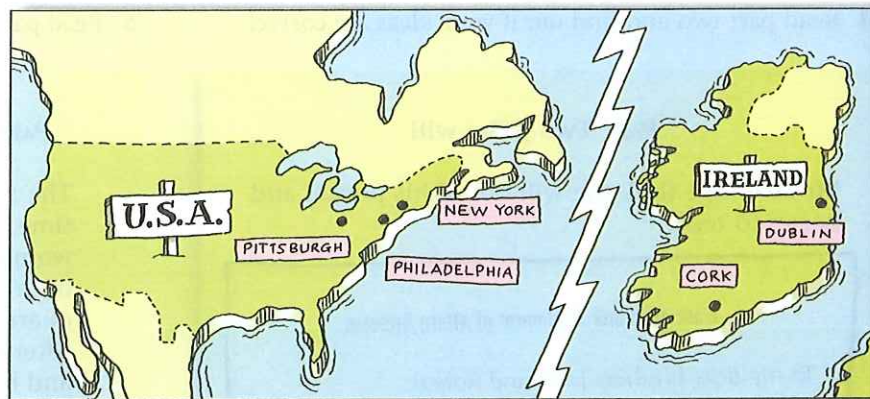
Complete the sentences using the Past Perfect.

- 1 John and Robert didn't speak to each other because ...
- 2 They were wearing black because ...
- 3 They didn't know that their sister ...
- 4 Mary said in her will that ...
- 5 When Annie was 27, both brothers ...
- 6 Annie told John that she wouldn't marry him or his brother because ...

LISTENING AND SPEAKING

Families that live abroad

- 1 Do many foreigners live in your country?
Where are they from?
What are they doing in your country?
- 2 Do people from your country go to live abroad?
Where do they go?
Why?
- 3 **T 14.8** Listen to two people, Patrick and Daniel, talking about their families. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Who were the first members of their family to go abroad?
Where did they go?
Why?
 - 2 Where did the family live at first?
 - 3 How long had they been in the country before they moved?
 - 4 Draw their movements on the maps.
 - 5 What work did they do?
 - 6 How many brothers and sisters has he got?
 - 7 Where did they go to school?
 - 8 Are they happy where they are?



What do you think?

Look at the pictures.

- Where are the people?
- Which country are they in?
- What jobs are they doing?
- What are their lives like?



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Saying goodbye

1 Match the sentences with the correct photos.



- 1 ☒ 'Goodbye! Have a safe journey. Send us a postcard!'
- 2 ☐ 'Goodbye. Thank you for a lovely evening.' 'You must come to us next time.'
- 3 ☐ 'Goodbye. It has been most interesting talking to you. We'll let you know by post.'
- 4 ☐ 'Bye! See you later. Are you doing anything tonight?'
- 5 ☐ 'Bye-bye! Thank you very much for having me.'
- 6 ☐ 'Goodbye. Here's my number. Please get in touch if you have any problems with it.'
- 7 ☐ 'Goodbye! Drive carefully and call us when you get there!'
- 8 ☐ 'Goodbye! Good luck in the future. I've really enjoyed our lessons together!'

2 **T 14.9** Listen and check. Practise saying the sentences.

3 Make more conversations for these situations:

- parents saying goodbye to son/daughter leaving home to share a flat with friends
- saying goodbye to friends after spending a holiday with them
- saying goodbye to your teacher/boss after finishing school/work at the end of the week
- saying goodbye to teachers/schoolfriends when you leave school



Tapescripts

Unit 1

T 1.1 Maurizio

My name's Maurizio Celi. I come from Bologna, a city in the north of Italy. I'm a student at the University of Bologna. I'm studying modern languages – English and Russian. I also know a little Spanish, so I can speak four languages. I'm enjoying the course a lot, but it's really hard work. The course started three years ago.

I live at home with my parents and my sister. My brother went to work in the United States last year.

After I graduate, I'm going to work as a translator. I hope so, anyway.

T 1.2 Carly

Hi. My name's Carly and I come from Australia. But I live near London now with my husband Dave and our three children. I came to Britain fifteen years ago when I got married.

I'm a student with the Open University. This means I watch special programmes on the television and work at home. I send my work to my course teacher every week. I'm studying art and the course is really interesting. At the moment, I'm reading about Italian painters in Italian, which is difficult because I only speak a little Italian!

My course started a year ago and it's three years long. After I graduate, I'm going to look for a job in an art gallery or museum.

T 1.3

- 1 I'm reading a good book.
I booked a room at a hotel.
- 2 What kind of music do you like?
My mother's a very kind person.
- 3 Can you swim?
I'd like a can of cola.
- 4 What does this mean?
Some people are very mean. They don't like spending their money.
- 5 I live in a flat.
Holland is a flat country.
- 6 Do you want to play football?
We saw a play at the theatre.
- 7 The train's coming.
Athletes have to train very hard.
- 8 The phone's ringing.
What a lovely ring you're wearing!

T 1.4 Mrs Snell

I've got a new neighbour. He moved in a few weeks ago. He's got a job, because I see him leaving the house every morning and then coming home in the evening. He's a builder, I think. He wears jeans and a T-shirt, so it can't be a very good job. Sometimes he comes home late.

I've never spoken to him. When he sees me, he says hello, but I don't answer back because nobody has introduced us. How can I speak to him?

A friend is living with him. It's such a small flat. I don't know how two people can live there. He started playing loud music last week. The

noise! It went on until two in the morning. He said sorry the next day, but it was a bit late by then. I didn't sleep all night.

Oh, there's the door. I can see him now. He's going out with his friend. I wonder what they're doing tonight. Having a good time. Going to the cinema, probably.

T 1.5 Steve

I moved into this flat a few weeks ago, and I'm really enjoying living here. There's only one bedroom, and at the moment my brother is staying with me because he's looking for a job.

I work in advertising. It's hard work, and the hours are really long, but I like it. And it's well paid. The office is really relaxed. No one wears a suit or a tie.

The only thing I don't like about this flat is one of the neighbours, Mrs Snell, I think her name is. She's really strange. She never speaks to anyone. I always say hello to her, and 'Are you all right?' and 'What a lovely day today!', but she never says a word. Maybe she doesn't like young people.

I bought a new stereo a few days ago. My brother helped me set it up and we played music until about 11.00. We didn't play it very loud, and when I saw Mrs Snell the next day, I said I hoped there wasn't too much noise, but as usual she didn't say anything. Funny lady.

This evening my brother and I are going to visit a friend of ours who's in hospital, and then we're going out for a Chinese meal.

T 1.6

- 1 'How are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
- 2 'Hello, Jane!' 'Hi, Habibal'
- 3 'How do you do?' 'How do you do?'
- 4 'See you tomorrow!' 'Bye!'
- 5 'Good night!' 'Sleep well!'
- 6 'Good morning!' 'Good morning!'
- 7 'Hello, I'm Ela Paul.'
'Pleased to meet you, Ela.'
- 8 'Excuse me!' 'Yes. Can I help you?'
- 9 'Bless you!' 'Thanks.'
- 10 'Have a good weekend!' 'Same to you!'
- 11 'Thank you very much indeed.'
'Not at all. Don't mention it.'
- 12 'Make yourself at home.'
'That's very kind. Thank you.'

Unit 2

T 2.1

- d Well, my country's got a population of ... er ... about three and a half million, so it's not a big place. Most of the people are from Europe, but about twelve per cent are Maori ... they were the original inhabitants. A lot of people live in bungalows, which are small houses on one floor. It's a very beautiful country. It's got a lot of mountains, and people love the countryside. Oh, and we're very good at rugby and cricket.

- e My country is the northern part of a bigger country, but we've got our own parliament. There are just over 5 million of us. We've got a lot of mountains, and there are also lots of rivers, lakes, and islands. People come to my country to fish. Our salmon is famous all over the world.
- f I come from a big country. It has a lot of wide open spaces. We have a population of ... almost 300 million, and these people have come from all over the world. We have big, cosmopolitan cities, but a lot of people live on farms, ranches, and in small towns. We like baseball and football – our kind of football. And we love to eat ... burgers with fries, and apple pie and ice-cream.

T 2.2

- A Do you have a car?
B Yes, I do.
C No, I don't.
A Have you got a car?
B Yes, I have.
C No, I haven't.
D I don't have a computer.
E I haven't got a computer.

T 2.3

Where does he come from?
Is she married?
Does she have any brothers and sisters?
Has he got any children?
How many brothers and sisters has she got?
What does he do?
What does she do in her free time?
Where do they go on holiday?
What's she doing at the moment?

T 2.4

have breakfast
wash my hair
watch a film on TV
talk to my friends
make a cup of tea
listen to music
relax on the sofa
do my homework
have a shower
clear up the mess
do the washing-up
have or put posters on the wall
cook a meal
send emails
put on make-up
read magazines

T 2.5 Home Truths

P = Presenter C = Carol M = Mike
D = Dave A = Alison

- P Hello and welcome to the programme. Today we're going to hear just what couples really think of each other. What drives you mad about your partner? Here's Carol, talking about her husband, Mike.
- C Well, there are a lot of arguments about television in our house. He gets the remote

control and he's always changing channels, so I never see what I want to. All he wants to watch is football, football, football. When I try to talk to him, he doesn't listen because he's watching the TV. And ... something else ... he never remembers anything – birthdays, when we're going out – nothing. I have to do it all. I decide where we're going on holiday, what car to buy. He can't make a decision to save his life.

P So there we have Carol's opinion. What does Mike say about her?

M When we're out in the car and she's driving, she doesn't change gears. She's talking about somebody or other, and not thinking about driving at all. I want to shout at her 'Change gear now!' but I don't. When I want to watch something on television, like ... the news, she always wants to watch a soap or a film. And another thing. She's always on the phone. She spends hours talking to our daughter, and do you know where she lives? Just round the corner.

P But what do they think of their marriage? Here's Carol.

C Well, I can't change him now, so I'll just have to put up with him.

P And Mike?

M We've been married for twenty-five years, and she's the only one for me!

P And now we have another couple, Dave and Alison. Oh, and by the way, Dave's an electrician.

A What drives me absolutely mad is that he starts a job and never finishes it. At work he's so professional, but at home, if I want a light in the bedroom changed, it takes him months. And he's so untidy. He just drops things on the floor. I keep saying that I don't want to be his mother as well as his wife. When we go out, he looks so scruffy, even when I'm all dressed up. His clothes are so old-fashioned. He never throws anything away.

P Oh, dear. Now what does Dave have to say about Alison?

D Well, she's never ready on time. She always finds something to do that means we're always late, wherever we go. She's usually doing her hair or her make-up while I'm saying 'Come on love, it's time to go.' And she loses things. She forgets where she parked the car, she leaves the car keys in the most stupid places. But what is most annoying about Alison is that she's always right!

P And their final opinions about each other?

A He's great. He's good fun, and he's one in a million.

D See? As I said, she's always right!

P So, there we are. My thanks to Carol and Mike, and Dave and Alison.

T 2.6

J = James M = Maria

1 J Hello. What's your name?

M Maria.

J I'm ... James. I'm a teacher. And ... where are you from?

M Rome.

J Er ... What ... what do you do?

M I'm a student.

J Mm. And ... how long have you been here in London, Maria?

M Two months.

J Are you having a good time?

M Mm ... Yes.

J Can I get you a coffee?

M No.

J Are you missing your family at all?

M No.

J Have you got any brothers or sisters?

M Yes.

J Er ... Oh! Er ... what do they do?

M They are students too.

J Oh well, I've got a class now. Goodbye, Maria.

M Ciao.

S = Sylvia J-P = Jean-Paul

2 S Hello. What's your name?

J-P Jean-Paul. And what's your name?

S Sylvia. Where are you from, Jean-Paul?

J-P I come from Paris, the most romantic city in the whole world. And you, Sylvia, where do you come from?

S I come from Scotland. What do you do in Paris?

J-P I'm an architect.

S Oh, really?

J-P Yeah. I design beautiful buildings for people with lots of money. I'm very expensive.

S How interesting.

J-P And how long have you been a teacher, Sylvie?

S Actually, my name's Sylvia.

J-P I am so sorry. Sylvie is the French name. Sylvia, sorry.

S Don't worry. I like it. I've been working here for five years.

J-P And do you enjoy it?

S Yes, very much. You meet a lot of people from all sorts of different countries. I like that very much. Are you enjoying it here?

J-P Very, very much. I'm learning a lot of English, I'm making a lot of friends, and even the food's not bad! Well, I'm not dead yet, and I've been here for five weeks. Sylvia, can I get you a coffee?

S I've got a few minutes before my next class, so that would be lovely. Thank you very much ...

J-P Why don't we ...

T 2.7

1 What a lovely day it is today!

Yes. Beautiful, isn't it?

2 It's very wet today.

Mm. Horrible. Makes you feel miserable, doesn't it?

3 How are you today?

I'm very well, thanks. How about you?

4 Did you have a nice weekend?

Yes, it was lovely. We had lunch and went for a walk.

5 How do you find living in London?

I'm enjoying it. It was a bit strange at first, but I'm getting used to it.

6 Did you have a good journey?

Yes, no problems. The plane was a bit late, but it didn't matter.

7 Did you watch the football yesterday?

No, I missed it. Was it a good game?

8 What a lovely jacket you're wearing!

Thank you. I got it in Paris last year.

9 If you have any problems, just ask me for help. Thank you very much. That's very kind of you.

10 Excuse me. Is this your scarf?

Yes, it is. Thank you. Where did you find it?

Unit 3

T 3.1 see p22

T 3.2

1 Russell woke up at two o'clock.

2 He woke up because he was thirsty.

3 He heard a noise in the kitchen.

4 He found three men.

5 Russell's mother kept her purse in her handbag.

6 They left at five o'clock.

7 When they left, Russell watched TV.

8 The police caught the burglars the next day.

T 3.3

asked	tried	liked	stopped
showed	carried	believed	planned
wanted		used	
walked			
started			

T 3.4

1 I broke a cup, but I mended it with glue.

2 I felt ill, so I went to bed.

3 I made a sandwich because I was hungry.

4 I had a shower and washed my hair.

5 I lost my passport, but then I found it at the back of a drawer.

6 I called the police because I heard a strange noise.

7 I ran out of coffee, so I bought some more.

8 I forgot her birthday, so I said sorry.

9 The phone rang, so I answered it.

10 I told a joke but nobody laughed.

T 3.5

Pierre Duboulay, 33, from Alsace, in France, is the greatest art thief in Europe. Between 1995 and 2004, while he was working as a lorry driver, he stole 239 paintings from museums in France, Austria and Denmark. He went into the museums just as they were closing and hid the paintings under his coat. Nobody looked at him because he was wearing a security guard's uniform. Back in his apartment, where he was living with his mother, he filled his bedroom with priceless works of art. His mother, Sylvie, 53, thought all the paintings were copies. One day, while they were having supper, the police arrived, and they took Pierre to the police station. Sylvie was so angry with her son that she went to his room, took some paintings from the walls, and cut them into small pieces. Others she took and threw into the river. Altogether she destroyed art worth two billion dollars! Both mother and son are now in prison for many years.

T 3.6

He was working

He was living

They were closing

They were having

T 3.7 Sherlock Holmes

SH = Sherlock Holmes HW = Henry Weaver
G = Mr Gresham

- HW Tell me, Holmes. What have you found out? Can the examination take place?
- SH Yes, the mystery is solved.
- HW But who ...? Which student ...?
- SH Please ask Mr Gresham to join us.
- HW Gresham, can you come here, please?
- G What is it? What's happened?
- SH Close the door, Mr Gresham. Now, tell me honestly, why did you do it? How did you do it?
- G Oh, no! I'm sorry, so sorry.
- SH Come, come Mr Gresham, perhaps it's easier if I speak. You see, when I learnt that you, Gresham, were an athlete and a long jumper, I understood immediately. This is what happened. That afternoon you were returning from practising your sport. You passed your tutor's window and because you are very tall you could see the papers on his desk. Then you saw that the door was open, so you entered, put your shoes down on the desk and moved to the window to copy the papers. Am I right so far?
- G Yes, Yes.
- SH Suddenly you heard your tutor at the side door. You picked up your shoes, leaving some mud on the desk, and ran into the bedroom. What you didn't see was that as you climbed out of the window, more mud from your shoes fell to the floor. This morning, early, I went to the sports ground and collected a sample of the same mud. Is this all correct, Mr Gresham?
- G Yes, it is. I feel so bad, so guilty and ashamed. But can I just show you this, Mr Weaver?
- HW What is it?
- G It's a letter. I wrote it in the middle of the night. Read it, please. In it I say how sorry I am for what I did.
- HW Ah yes. And you say you are not going to take the examination. Oh, and you're going to leave the university and go to Africa.
- G Yes, I am.
- HW Gresham, I am really pleased to hear that.
- SH Well, Mr Weaver, Mr Gresham, time for my breakfast, I think. I hope the exams go well, Mr Weaver. Good luck in Africa, Mr Gresham. Goodbye.
- HW Thank you, Holmes. It was a lucky chance that you were staying in town at this time.

T 3.8

- 1 I asked the teacher for help, but unfortunately, I didn't understand his explanation.
- 2 Please, can you help me translate this into English?
- 3 My English improved a lot after I lived in London for a month.
- 4 Watch out! Be careful or you'll fall.
- 5 There are many differences between my two children. They aren't similar at all.
- 6 Motor racing is a very dangerous sport.
- 7 Didn't you enjoy the film? I thought it was wonderful.
- 8 Thank you for your advice. It was very helpful.

- 9 The United Nations is an international organization.
- 10 We received an invitation to Ted and Sarah's wedding.

T 3.9

- 1 Don't go into my bedroom. It's really untidy.
- 2 I can't do maths. For me, it's an impossible subject.
- 3 I don't dislike fish. I just prefer meat.
- 4 It's very impolite to ask someone how much they earn.
- 5 When we arrived at the hotel, we unpacked our suitcases.
- 6 I was unemployed for two years. Then I got a job in an office.
- 7 'I think learning languages is stupid.' 'I disagree. I think it's a good idea.'
- 8 The thief stole my bag, ran into the crowd and disappeared. I never saw him again.
- 9 It's illegal to drive if you aren't insured.
- 10 You gave her more money than me! That's unfair!

T 3.10 see p29**T 3.11** see p29**T 3.12**

June the fourth
the fifth of August
the thirty-first of July
March the first
February the third
the twenty-first of January, nineteen eighty-eight
December the second, nineteen ninety-six
the fifth of April, nineteen eighty
June the eleventh, nineteen sixty-five
the eighteenth of October, two thousand
January the thirty-first, two thousand and five

Unit 4

T 4.1 see p30**T 4.2** see p31**T 4.3**

- 1 'Did you meet anyone interesting at the conference?'
'Yes. I met someone who knows you!'
- 2 'Ouch! There's something in my eye!'
'Let me look. No, I can't see anything.'
- 3 'Let's go somewhere exciting for our holidays.'
'But we can't go anywhere that's too expensive.'
- 4 'I'm so unhappy. Nobody loves me.'
'I know somebody who loves you. Me.'
- 5 I lost my glasses. I looked everywhere, but I couldn't find them.
- 6 'Did you buy anything at the shops?'
'No, nothing. I didn't have any money.'
- 7 I'm bored. I want something interesting to read, or someone interesting to talk to, or somewhere interesting to go.
- 8 It was a great film. Everyone loved it.

T 4.4 see p33**T 4.5**

- 1 A Hello. Can I help you?
B I'm just looking, thanks.
B I'm looking for a sweater like this, but in blue. Have you got one?
A I'll just have a look. What size are you?
B Medium.
A Here you are.
B That's great. Can I try it on?
A Of course. The changing rooms are over there.
B I like it.
A It fits you very well.
B How much is it?
A £39.99.
B OK. I'll have it.
A How would you like to pay?
B Cash.
- 2 A Could you help me? I'm looking for this month's edition of *Vogue*. Can you tell me where it is?
B Over there. Middle shelf. Next to *She*.
- 3 A Hello. I wonder if you could help me. I've got a bad cold and a sore throat. Can you give me something for it?
B OK. You can take these three times a day.
A Thank you. Could I have some tissues as well, please?
B Sure. Anything else?
A No, that's all, thanks.
- 4 A Good morning. Can I have a black coffee, please?
B Espresso?
A Yes, please. Oh, and a doughnut, please.
B I'm afraid there aren't any left. We've got some delicious carrot cake, and chocolate cake.
A OK. Carrot cake, then.
B Certainly. Is that all?
A Yes, thanks.
B That'll be £2.85, please.
A Thank you.

T 4.6

- 1 A Two coffees, please.
B Two pounds eighty, please.
- 2 A How much is this sweater?
B Twenty-eight pounds fifty.
- 3 A A white loaf and three rolls, please.
B That'll be one pound eighty-two p.
- 4 A How much do I owe you?
B Twelve dollars and twenty cents.
- 5 A How much was your car?
B Fifteen thousand dollars.
- 6 A What a fantastic house!
B Darling! It cost half a million pounds!
- 7 A Just this book, please.
B Five pounds ninety-nine, then.
- 8 A How much was the cheque for?
B A hundred and sixty dollars.

Unit 5

T 5.1

- 1 Sean
When I grow up, I want to be a footballer and play for Manchester United, because I want to earn lots of money. After that, I'm going to be an astronaut, and fly in a rocket

to Mars and Jupiter. And I'd like all the people in the world and all the animals in the world to be happy.

2 **Mel**

I've finished my first year at Bristol University, and now I'm going to have a year off. My brother and I are going round the world. We hope to find work as we go. I really want to meet people from all over the world, and see how different people live their lives.

3 **Kamal**

What I'd really like to do, because I'm mad about TV and everything to do with TV, is to become a TV presenter. I'm getting married next June, so I can't do anything about it yet, but I'm going to start applying for jobs this time next year.

4 **Martyn**

My great passion is writing. I write plays. Three have been performed already, two in Edinburgh and one in Oxford. But my secret ambition ... and this would be the best thing in my life ... I would love to have one of my plays performed on the London stage. That would be fantastic.

5 **Amy**

We're thinking of moving, because the kids are leaving home soon. Meg's eighteen, she's doing her A levels this year, so with a bit of luck, she'll be off to university next year. And Kate's fifteen. Jack and I both enjoy walking, and Jack likes fishing, so we're going to move to the country.

5 **Alison**

Well, I've just broken my arm, so what I really want to do is to go back to the health club as soon as possible. I really enjoy swimming. At my age, it's important to stay physically fit, and I want to be able to go off travelling without feeling unwell. I'm going to retire next year, and I'm looking forward to having more time to do the things I want to do.

T 5.2

- 1 A I hope to go to university.
B What do you want to study?
- 2 A One of my favourite hobbies is cooking.
B What do you like making?
- 3 A I get terrible headaches.
B When did you start getting them?
- 4 A We're planning our summer holidays at the moment.
B Where are you thinking of going?
- 5 A I'm tired.
B What would you like to do this evening?

T 5.3

- 1 'What are the lads doing this afternoon?'
'They're going to see a football match. United are playing at home.'
- 2 'Oh, dear! I've dropped one.'
'I'll pick it up for you.'
'Thank you. That's very kind.'
- 3 'What's Tom doing next week?'
'He's going to go to Malaysia.'
'I guess he's going on business, right?'
- 4 'The phone's ringing.'
'It's OK. I'll answer it. I'm expecting a call.'
- 5 'I haven't got any money.'
'Don't worry. I'll lend you some.'
'Thanks. I'll pay you back tomorrow. I won't forget.'

- 6 'What are you and Pete doing this evening?'
'We're going out to have a meal. It's my birthday.'

T 5.4

- 1 'My bag is so heavy.' 'Give it to me ...'
- 2 I bought some warm boots because ...
- 3 'Tony's back from holiday.'
'Is he? I ...'
- 4 What are you doing this evening?
- 5 You can tell me your secret.
- 6 Congratulations! I hear ...
- 7 I need to post these letters.
- 8 Now, holidays. Where ...

T 5.5 A song

You've got a friend

When you're down and troubled
And you need a helping hand
And nothing, but nothing is going right
Close your eyes and think of me
And soon I will be there
To brighten up even your darkest nights.

(Chorus)

You just call out my name,
and you know wherever I am
I'll come running to see you again.
Winter, spring, summer, or fall
All you have to do is call
And I'll be there, yeah, yeah, yeah,
You've got a friend.

If the sky above you
Turns dark and full of clouds
And that old north wind begins to blow
Keep your head together
And call my name out loud
And soon I'll be knocking on your door.
Hey, ain't it good to know that you've got a friend?

People can be so cold.
They'll hurt you and desert you.
Well, they'll take your soul if you let them.
Oh, yeah, but don't you let them.
(Chorus)

T 5.6

- 1 'I feel nervous. I've got an exam today.'
'Good luck! Do your best.'
- 2 'I don't feel very well. I think I'm getting the 'flu.'
'Why don't you go home to bed?'
- 3 'I'm feeling a lot better, thanks. I've got a lot more energy.'
'That's good. I'm pleased to hear it.'
- 4 'I'm really excited. I'm going on holiday to Australia tomorrow.'
'That's great. Have a good time.'
- 5 'I'm fed up with this weather. It's so wet and miserable.'
'I know. We really need some sunshine, don't we?'
- 6 'I'm really tired. I couldn't get to sleep last night.'
'Poor you! That happens to me sometimes. I just read in bed.'
- 7 'I'm a bit worried. My grandfather's going into hospital for tests.'
'I'm sorry to hear that, but I'm sure he'll be all right.'
- 8 'I feel really depressed at the moment. Nothing's going right in my life.'
'Cheer up! Things can't be that bad!'

Unit 6

T 6.1 Todd's tennis tour

T = Todd E = Ellen

- E You're so lucky, Todd. You travel all over the world. I never leave Chicago!
- T Yeah – but it's hard work. I just practise, practise, practise and play tennis all the time. I don't get time to see much.
- E What about last year? Where did you go? Tell me about it.
- T Well – in January I was in Melbourne, for the Australian Open. It's a beautiful city, sort of big and very cosmopolitan, like Chicago. There's a nice mixture of old and new buildings. January's their summer so it was hot when I was there.
- E And what's Dubai like? When were you there?
- T In February. We went from Australia to Dubai for the Dubai Tennis Open. Boy is Dubai hot! Hot, very dry, very modern. Lots of really modern buildings, white buildings. Interesting place, I enjoyed it.
- E And Paris! That's where I want to go! What's Paris like?
- T Everything that you imagine! Very beautiful, wonderful old buildings but lots of interesting modern ones too. And of course very, very romantic, especially in May.

T 6.2 What's Chicago like?

T = Todd F = Todd's English friend

- 1 F What's the weather like?
T Well, Chicago's called 'the windy city' and it really can be windy!
- 2 F What are the people like?
T They're very interesting. You meet people from all over the world.
- 3 F What are the buildings like?
T A lot of them are very, very tall. The Sears Tower is 110 storeys high.
- 4 F What are the restaurants like?
T They're very good. You can find food from every country in the world.
- 5 F What's the night-life like?
T Oh, it's wonderful. There's lots to do in Chicago.

T 6.3 Todd's world tour

Melbourne was interesting, but, for me, Paris was more interesting than Melbourne, and in some ways Dubai was the most interesting of all because it was so different from any other place I know. It was also the hottest, driest, and most modern. It was hot in Melbourne but not as hot as in Dubai. Dubai was much hotter! Melbourne is much older than Dubai but not as old as Paris. Paris was the oldest city I visited, but it has some great modern buildings, too. It was the most romantic place. I loved it.

T 6.4 see p48

T 6.5 see p48

T 6.6 Conversations

- 1 A I moved to a new flat last week.
B Oh, really? What's it like?
A Well, it's bigger than my old one but it isn't as modern, and it's further from the shops.
- 2 A I hear Martin's got a new boss.

- B Yeah. He started work last week.
 B Oh, really? What's he like?
 A Well, he's much nicer than his old boss and much more intelligent. Martin's happier now than he's been for a long time.
 3 A We have a new teacher.
 B Oh, really? What's she like?
 A Well, I think she's the best teacher we've ever had. Our last teacher was good but she's even better and she works us much harder.
 4 A Is that your new car?
 B Well, it's second-hand, but it's new to me.
 A What's it like?
 B Well, it's faster than my old car and more comfortable, but it's more expensive to run. I love it!

T 6.7

Jane Bland talks about living in Sweden

J = Jane F = Fran, a friend

- J When I say that I live in Sweden, everyone always wants to know about the seasons ...
 F The seasons?
 J Yeah ... you know, how cold it is in winter – what it's like when the days are so short.
 F So what is it like?
 J Well, it is cold, very cold in winter, sometimes as cold as -26° and of course when you go out you wrap up warm, but inside, in the houses, it's always very warm, much warmer than at home. Swedish people always complain that when they visit England the houses are cold even in a good winter. In Sweden the houses are much better insulated than in Britain and they always have the heating on very high.
 F And what about the darkness?
 J Well, yeah, towards the end of December, there's only *one* hour of daylight – so you really look forward to the spring. It is sometimes a bit depressing but you see the summers are amazing – from May to July, in the north of Sweden, the sun never sets, it's still light at midnight, you can walk in the mountains and read a newspaper.
 F Oh, yeah – the land of the midnight sun.
 J That's right. But it's wonderful, you want to stay up all night and the Swedes make the most of it. Often they start work earlier in summer and then leave at about two or three in the afternoon, so that they can really enjoy the long summer evenings. They like to work hard but play hard too. I think Londoners work longer hours, but I'm not sure this is a good thing.
 F So what about free time? Weekends?
 Holidays? What do Swedish people like doing?
 J Well, every house in Sweden has a sauna ...
 F Every house!
 J Well, every house I've been to. And most people have a country cottage, so people like to leave the town and get back to nature at weekends. These cottages are sometimes quite primitive, – no running water or not even toilets and ...
 F No toilet?
 J Well, *some* don't have toilets but they *all* have a sauna. After the sauna they run and jump into the lake to get cool.
 F What!? Even in winter?

- J Yeah – Swedish people are very healthy.
 F Brrr! Or mad!

T 6.8 Synonyms

- 'Mary's family is very rich.'
'Well, I knew her uncle was very wealthy.'
- 'Look at all these new buildings!'
'Yes. Paris is much more modern than I expected.'
- 'Wasn't that film wonderful!'
'Yes, it was brilliant.'
- 'George doesn't earn much money, but he's so kind.'
'He is, isn't he? He's one of the most generous people I know.'
- 'Ann's bedroom's really untidy again!'
'Is it? I told her it was messy yesterday, and she promised to clean it.'
- 'I'm bored with this lesson!'
'I know, I'm really fed up with it, too!'

T 6.9 Antonyms

- 'London's such an expensive city.'
'Well, it's not very cheap.'
- 'Paul and Sue are so mean.'
'They're certainly not very generous.'
- 'Their house is always so messy.'
'Mmm ... it's not very tidy.'
- 'Their children are so noisy.'
'Yes, they're certainly not very quiet.'
- 'John looks so miserable.'
'Hmm, he's not very happy.'
- 'His sister's so stupid.'
'Well, she's certainly not very clever.'

T 6.10 Giving directions

You go down the path, past the pond, over the bridge, and out of the gate. Then you go across the road and take the path through the wood. When you come out of the wood you walk up the path and go across the road. It takes five minutes.

Unit 7

T 7.1

- He wrote novels about Victorian life. She writes novels about modern people and their relationships.
- He wrote 47 novels, travel books, biographies, and short stories. She has written over twenty novels. She started writing in her thirties.
- She has lived in the west of England for forty years. He lived in Ireland for eighteen years.
- She has been married twice, and has two daughters. She married for the first time in 1966. He was married and had two sons.

T 7.2

- Anthony Trollope travelled to South Africa, Australia, Egypt, and the West Indies. Joanna Trollope has travelled to many parts of the world.
- She has won many awards, and several of her stories have appeared on TV.
- Her first book came out in 1980. Since then, she has sold more than 5 million copies.
- She went to school in the south of England, and studied English at Oxford University, but

she has lived in the country for most of her life.

- 5 She writes her books by hand. She has had the same pen since 1995.

T 7.3

- How long has she lived in the west of England?
For forty years.
- What did she study at university?
English.
- How many novels has she written?
More than twenty.
- How many books has she sold?
Over five million.
- When did her first novel come out?
In 1980.
- How many times has she been married?
Twice.
- Has she got any children?
Yes, two daughters.
- How long has she had her pen?
Since 1995.

T 7.4

- I've known my best friend for years. We met when we were 10.
- I last went to the cinema two weeks ago. The film was rubbish.
- I've had this watch for three years. My dad gave it to me for my birthday.
- We've used this book since the beginning of term. It's not bad. I quite like it.
- We lived in our old flat from 1988 to 1996. We moved because we needed somewhere bigger.
- We haven't had a break for an hour. I really need a cup of coffee.
- I last had a holiday in 1999. I went camping with some friends.
- This building has been a school since 1985. Before that it was an office.

T 7.5

- A Where do you live, Olga?
 B In a flat near the park.
 A How long have you lived there?
 B For three years.
 A And why did you move?
 B We wanted to live in a nicer area.

T 7.6

An interview with the band *Style*

I = Interviewer S = Suzie G = Guy

- I ... and that was the latest record from *Style* called *Give it to me*. And guess who I've got sitting right next to me in the studio? I've got Suzie Tyler and Guy Holmes, who are the two members of *Style*. Welcome to the programme!
 S Thanks a lot.
 I Now you two have been very busy this year, haven't you? You've had a new album out, and you've been on tour. How are you feeling?
 S Pretty tired. We've just got back from Holland, and in April we went to Japan and Australia, so yeah ... we've travelled a lot this year.
 G But we've made a lot of friends, and we've had some fun.
 I Tell us something about your background. What did you do before forming *Style*?

- G Well, we both played with a lot of other bands before teaming up with each other.
- I Who have you played with, Suzie?
- S Well, over the years I've sung with Lionel Richie and Phil Collins, and a band called *Ace*.
- I And what about you, Guy?
- G I've recorded with *Genesis* and *UB40*, and of course, *Happy Mondays*.
- I Why is *Happy Mondays* so important to you?
- G Because I had my first hit record with them. The song was called *Mean Street*, and it was a hit all over the world ... that was in 1995.
- I So how long have you two been together as *Style*?
- S Since 1997. We met at a recording studio while I was doing some work with *Bon Jovi*. We started chatting and Guy asked me if I'd like to work with him, and it all started from there.
- I Suzie, you're obviously the vocalist, but do you play any music yourself?
- S Yes, I play keyboards.
- I And what about you, Guy?
- G I play guitar and harmonica. I can play the drums, but when we're doing a concert we have a backing group.
- I So where have you two travelled to?
- S Well, I ... er ... I sometimes think that we've been everywhere, but we haven't really. We've toured in Europe, Italy, Holland, and we've done Japan and Australia, but we've never been to America. That's the next place we'd like to go. And then Eastern Europe. I'd love to play in these places.
- G You forgot Sweden. We went there two years ago.
- S Oh yeah.
- I Over the years you've made a lot of records. Do you know exactly how many?
- G That's a difficult question, erm ...
- I Well, about how many?
- S Oh, I don't know. Perhaps about twenty-five.
- G Yeah, something like that.
- I And how long have you been in the music business?
- G I guess about fifteen years. I've never had another job. I've only ever been a musician, since I was seventeen.
- S I've had all sorts of jobs. When I left college, I worked as a waitress, a shop assistant, a painter, a gardener ... I could go on and on ...
- I Well, stop there, because now you're a member of a band. Suzie and Guy, it was great to talk to you. Good luck with the new record.
- S/G Thanks.
- I And now for something different. We're ...

T 7.7

- 1 'Do you still play tennis?'
'Not regularly. Just now and then, when I have time.'
- 2 This is a pretty relaxed place to work. There aren't many do's and don'ts.
- 3 Here you are at last! I've been so worried! Thank goodness you've arrived safe and sound.
- 4 'Do you like your new job?'
'Yes and no. The money's OK, but I don't like the people.'
- 5 Sometimes there are too many people in the house. I go into the garden for a bit of peace and quiet.
- 6 Good evening, ladies and gentlemen. It gives

- me great pleasure to talk to you all tonight.
- 7 'How's your gran?'
'Up and down. There are good days, and then not such good days.'
- 8 'Here's supper. Careful! It's hot.'
'Fish and chips! Yummy!'

T 7.8

- 1 'Do you like learning English, Elsa?'
'Yes.'
'Do you like learning English, Elsa?'
'Yes, I do. I love it. It's the language of Shakespeare.'
- 2 'Are those new jeans you're wearing?'
'No.'
'Are those new jeans you're wearing?'
'No, they aren't. I've had them for ages.'
- 3 'Have you got the time, please?'
'No.'
'Have you got the time, please?'
'No, I haven't. I'm so sorry.'
- 4 'Can you play any musical instruments?'
'Yes.'
'Can you play any musical instruments?'
'Yes, I can, actually. I can play the violin.'

Unit 8

T 8.1 Steven's job

I = Interviewer S = Steven

- I What sort of hours do you work, Steven?
- S Well, I have to work very long hours, about eleven hours a day.
- I What time do you start?
- S I work nine till three, then I start again at five thirty and work until eleven. Six days a week. So I have to work very unsocial hours.
- I And do you have to work at the weekend?
- S Oh, yes. That's our busiest time. I get Wednesdays off.
- I What are some of the things you have to do, and some of the things you don't have to do?
- S Er ... I don't have to do the washing-up, so that's good! I have to wear white, and I have to be very careful about hygiene. Everything in the kitchen has to be totally clean.
- I What's hard about the job?
- S You're standing up all the time. When we're busy, people get angry and shout, but that's normal.
- I How did you learn the profession?
- S Well, I did a two-year course at college. In the first year we had to learn the basics, and then we had to take exams.
- I Was it easy to find a job?
- S I wrote to about six hotels, and one of them gave me my first job, so I didn't have to wait too long.
- I And what are the secrets of being good at your job?
- S Attention to detail. You have to love it. You have to be passionate about it.
- I And what are your plans for the future?
- S I want to have my own place. When the time's right.

T 8.2

- 1 I have a good job.
I have to work hard.
- 2 He has a nice car.
She has to get up early.

- 3 I had a good time.
I had to take exams.

T 8.3

- 1 'I'm working 16 hours a day.'
'I think you should talk to your boss.'
- 2 'I can't sleep.'
'You shouldn't drink coffee at night.'
- 3 'I get seasick very easily.'
'I don't think you should go on that boat trip next week.'
- 4 'I've had a terrible toothache for weeks.'
'You must go to the dentist!'

T 8.4 Holidays in January

- 1 **Silvia**
In January the weather is wonderful. It's the most perfect time of year, not too hot, not too cold, but the temperature can change a lot in just one day. It can go from quite chilly to very warm, so you should perhaps bring a jacket but you don't need any thick winter clothes. The capital city is the most populated city in the world and there are lots of things to see and do there. We have lots of very old, historic buildings. We are very proud of our history, with Mayan and Aztec temples. But you should also go to the coast. We have beautiful beaches. Perhaps you've heard of Acapulco.
You don't need a lot of money to enjoy your holiday. There are lots of good cheap hotels and restaurants, and of course you must visit the markets. You can buy all kinds of pottery and things quite cheaply, and don't forget our wonderful fruit and vegetables. We have one hundred different kinds of pepper. You should try tacos, which are a kind of bread filled with meat, beans, and salad. And our fruit juices are very good.
- 2 **Fatima**
It's usually quite mild in January, and it doesn't often rain, so you don't have to bring warm clothes. But you'll need a light coat or a jumper because it can get cool in the evenings.
There is so much to see and do. We have some wonderful museums, especially the museum of Islamic Art and the mosques are beautiful, but of course what everyone wants to see is the Pyramids. You must visit the Pyramids. Go either early in the morning or late in the afternoon, the light is much better then. And if you have time you should take a cruise down the Nile, that's really interesting, you can visit all sorts of places that are difficult to get to by land.
The best place to try local food is in the city centre. You should try *koftas* and *kebabs*, which are made of meat, usually lamb. You should also try *falafel*, which is a kind of ball made of beans mixed with herbs, it's fried until it's crispy. It's delicious. One of the nicest things to drink is tea, mint tea. It's especially good if the weather is very hot, it's really refreshing.
- 3 **Karl**
Well, of course in January in my country it can be very cold, with lots of snow everywhere, so you must bring lots of warm clothes, coats and woolly hats, and, if you can, snow boots.

Many people go skiing in the mountains at the weekends and when you are up so high and the sky is blue, the sun can feel really quite hot - warm enough to have lunch outside. You can even sunbathe, so you should bring sun cream! But you don't have to go skiing, there are lots of other things to do and see. A lot of our towns are very pretty. They look exactly the same today as they did four hundred years ago. And we have beautiful lakes. If the weather's fine you can go for a boat trip and you can get really wonderful views of the mountains all around, from Lake Geneva you can sometimes see as far as Mont Blanc.

The food you must try is *fondue*, which is cheese melted in a pot. You put pieces of bread on long forks to get it out. Also you could try *rösti* made with potatoes and cream - mmm! They're both delicious.

T 8.5

- Children always need the support of their parents, whether they're four or 24. I think you should pay for him to get some qualifications, and when he's ready, you should help him to find somewhere to live. Meanwhile, you've got to give him all the love that he needs.
Jenny Torr Brighton
- I decided to give it all up and change my life dramatically three years ago. Since then, I have had the most exciting three years of my life. It can be scary, but if you don't do it, you won't know what you've missed. I don't think you should worry. Go for it.
Mike Garfield Manchester
- He's using you. I think you should tell him to leave home. It's time for him to go. Twenty-four is too old to be living with his parents. He's got to take responsibility for himself. And you must talk to him about his unsuitable friends. Sometimes you have to be cruel to be kind.
Tony Palmer Harrow
- Why should he accept it? He isn't their slave, they don't own him. And I too can't stand the way people use their mobiles in restaurants, on trains and buses. They think that the people around them are invisible and can't hear. It is so rude.
Jane Sands London
- I think she should be very careful before she gives up her job and goes to live abroad. Does she think that the sun will always shine? If there is something in her life that makes her unhappy now, this will follow her. She should take her time before making a decision.
Nigella Lawnes Bristol
- He must keep it! He should have a word with his company and come to an arrangement with them. Why can't he turn it off sometimes? Mobile phones are great, and if he's got one for free, he's very lucky. They are one of the best inventions ever.
Pete Hardcastle Birmingham

T 8.6

alarm clock	hairdrier
car park	sunset
traffic lights	earring
credit card	signpost
ice-cream	bookcase
sunglasses	rush hour
timetable	cigarette lighter
raincoat	earthquake

T 8.7

D = Doctor H = Hassan
D Hello. Come and sit down. What seems to be the matter?
H Well, I haven't felt very well for a few days. I've got a bit of a temperature, and I just feel terrible. I've got stomach ache as well.
D Have you felt sick?
H I've been sick a few times.
D Mm. Let me have a look at you. Your glands aren't swollen. Have you got a sore throat?
H No, I haven't.
D Have you had diarrhoea at all?
H Yes, I have, actually.
D Have you had anything to eat recently which might have disagreed with you?
H No, I don't think so ... Oh! I went to a barbecue a few days ago and the chicken wasn't properly cooked.
D It could be that, or just something that was left out of the fridge for too long.
H Yes, I started being ill that night.
D Well, you should have a day or two in bed, and I'll give you something that will look after the stomach ache and diarrhoea. Drink plenty of liquids, and just take things easy for a while. I'll write you a prescription.
H Thank you. Do I have to pay you?
D No, no. Seeing me is free, but you'll have to pay for the prescription. It's £6.
H Right. Thanks very much. Goodbye.
D Bye-bye.

Unit 9

T 9.1

- We're travelling round the world before we go to university.
- We're going to leave as soon as we have enough money.
- When we're in Australia, we're going to learn to scuba dive on the Great Barrier Reef.
- If we get ill, we'll look after each other.
- After we leave Australia, we're going to the USA.
- We can stay with my American cousins while we're in Los Angeles.
- Our parents will be worried if we don't keep in touch.
- We'll stay in the States until our visa runs out.

T 9.2

- When I get home, I'm going to have a bath.
- As soon as this lesson finishes, I'm going home.
- If I get this job, I'll buy a car.
- After I leave school, I want to go to college.
- While I'm in New York, I'll do some shopping.
- I'm going to travel the world before I get too old.

T 9.3

M = Mary P = Paul
M Bye, darling. Have a good trip to New York.
P Thanks. I'll ring you as soon as I arrive at the hotel.
M Fine. Remember I'm going out with Jenny this evening.
P Well, if you're out when I ring, I'll leave a message on the answer phone, so you'll know I've arrived safely.
M Great. What time do you expect you'll be there?
P If the plane arrives on time, I'll be at the hotel about 10.00.
M All right. Give me a ring as soon as you know the time of your flight back, and I'll pick you up at the airport.
P Thanks, darling. Don't forget to water the plants while I'm away.
M Don't worry. I won't. Bye!

T 9.4 An interview with Michio Kaku

I = Interviewer MK = Michio Kaku
I Are you optimistic about the future?
MK Generally, yeah. If we go back to 1900, most Americans didn't live after the age of 50. Since then we've had improvements in healthcare and technology. There's no reason why these won't continue far into the 21st century.
I Are we ready for the changes that will come?
MK Changes are already happening. The future is here now. We have DNA, microchips, the Internet. Some people's reaction is to say 'We're too old, we don't understand new technology.' My reaction is to say 'We must educate people to use new technology now.'
I Is world population going to be a big problem?
MK Yes and no. I think that world population will stop increasing as we all get richer. If you are part of the middle class, you don't want or need twelve children.
I What will happen to people who don't have computers?
MK Everyone will have computers. The Internet will be free and available to everyone.
I Will there be a world government?
MK Very probably. We will have to manage the world and its resources on a global level, because countries alone are too small. We already have a world language called English, and there is the beginning of a world telephone system, and that's called the Internet.
I Will we have control of everything?
MK I think we'll learn to control the weather, volcanoes and earthquakes. Illness won't exist. We will grow new livers, kidneys, hearts, and lungs like spare parts for a car. People will live till about 130 or 150. For two thousand years we have tried to understand our environment. Now we will begin to control it.
I What are your reasons for pessimism?
MK People will still fundamentally be the same, with all their intelligence and stupidity. There will still be cruel people, people who want to fight wars against other races and religions, people who don't see that we have to look after our forests, our oceans, our atmosphere, people who think that money is everything. We will have the technology.

The question is, will we have the wisdom to use the technology to our advantage?

T 9.5

- 1 I did some shopping while I was in Paris. I bought myself a new sweater.
- 2 'I don't know if I want coffee or tea.' 'Make up your mind. You can't have them both.'
- 3 Bye-bye! See you soon. Take care of yourself.
- 4 Aachoo! Oh dear. I think I'm getting a cold.
- 5 'Are the doors locked?' 'I think so, but I'll just make sure.'

T 9.6

- R = Receptionist C = Client**
- R Hello, the Grand Hotel. Cathy speaking. How can I help you?
- C I'd like to make a reservation, please.
- R Certainly. When is it for?
- C It's for two nights, the thirteenth and the fourteenth of this month.
- R And do you want a single or a double room?
- C A single, please.
- R OK. Yes, that's fine. I have a room for you. And your name is?
- C Robert Palmer. Can you tell me how much it is?
- R Yes. That's £95 a night. Can I have a credit card number, please?
- C Yes, sure. It's a Visa. 4929 7983 0621 8849.
- R Thank you. And could I have a phone number?
- C Uh huh. 01727 489962.
- R That's fine. We look forward to seeing you on the thirteenth. Bye-bye.
- C Thanks a lot. Goodbye.

Unit 10

T 10.1 Don't look down

Paul Lay dances with death in the mountains of southern Spain

I have always enjoyed walking. When I was a boy, I used to go walking at weekends with my father. We went camping and climbing together.

I try to visit a new place every year. Last year I decided to walk a path in Spain called *El Camino del Rey*, which means the King's Way. It is one of the highest and most dangerous footpaths in Europe. It used to be very safe, but now it is falling down.

I took a train to the village of El Chorro and started to walk towards the mountains. I was very excited.

Then the adventure began. The path was about three feet wide and there were holes in it. It used to have a handrail, but not any more. I didn't know what to do – should I go on my hands and knees, or stand up? I decided to stand up and walk very slowly. At times the path was only as wide as my two boots. I stopped to have a rest, but there was nowhere to sit.

I began to feel very frightened. It was impossible to look down or look up. I was concentrating so hard that my body started aching. There was no thrill of danger, no enjoyment of the view. I thought I was going to die.

I finally managed to get to the end. I was shaking, and I was covered in sweat from heat and fear. I fell to the ground, exhausted.

T 10.2

- 1 Now I usually go shopping at the weekend and I play tennis. When I was a child, I used to go fishing with my father.
- 2 In the evening I used to watch TV and do my homework. Now I read, or go out with friends.
- 3 We go to a hotel somewhere hot and just do nothing. When I was young, we used to go camping in Europe. We went everywhere – France, Italy, Austria, Germany.
- 4 I was very sporty. I used to play everything. Rugby, tennis, swimming, hockey. Now I just play tennis.
- 5 I like documentaries and sport. When I was a kid, I used to like cartoons, comedies, action films, you know, like James Bond.
- 6 I liked all the things that kids like. Beans, pizza, fizzy drinks. I used to love chips. Still do. Now I eat everything. Except peppers. Really don't like peppers.

T 10.3

- 1 'I'm hungry. I need something to eat.' 'Have a sandwich.'
- 2 'I'm going to a formal dinner, but I don't know what to wear.' 'I think you should wear your black dress.'
- 3 'My CD player's broken. Can you show me how to repair it?' 'I'm sorry. I haven't a clue.'
- 4 'Don't talk to me. I have nothing to say to you.' 'Oh, dear! What have I done wrong?'
- 5 'Do I turn left or right? I don't know where to go.' 'Go straight on.'
- 6 'I'm bored. I haven't got anything to do.' 'Why don't you read the dictionary?'
- 7 'Can you get some meat?' 'Sure. Tell me how much to buy.'
- 8 'A kilo.'
- 9 'I feel lonely. I need somebody to talk to.' 'Come and talk to me. I'm not doing anything.'

T 10.4

- | | |
|------------|-----------|
| frightened | terrified |
| excited | bored |
| surprised | exhausted |

T 10.5

- 1 I met a famous film star today.
- 2 I spent four hours going round a museum.
- 3 I haven't heard from my parents for two months.
- 4 Wow, Maria! What are you doing here?
- 5 I failed my exam. I worked ...
- 6 Smoke started to come from the front of the plane.
- 7 My computer's broken, and ...

T 10.6 The sinking of the Titanic

- A What do you know about the *Titanic*?
- B The *Titanic*? You mean the ship that sank? The one they called 'the unsinkable'?
- A Yes, that's right. The biggest ship of its time.
- B Well, er ... it was about a hundred years ago, wasn't it?
- A Yep, 1912, to be exact.
- B And wasn't it going across the Atlantic, from England to New York?
- A That's it. It left Southampton on 10 April

1912 with 1,324 passengers on board and 900 crew members. And the night of Sunday the fourteenth, it was very clear and very cold, and two other ships in the area actually told them to be careful because there were icebergs around.

- B So they did know that it was dangerous?
- A Yes, but they didn't want to worry the passengers. The people just carried on eating and enjoying themselves.
- B But if they knew it was dangerous, why didn't they just stop?
- A Well, the owner of the boat was on board, a Mr Bruce Ismay, and he told the captain to go faster and faster, because he wanted the *Titanic* to be the fastest ship to cross the Atlantic. The record was four days and nineteen hours ...
- B No! Really? But that's terrible!
- A And then someone saw the iceberg in front of them. At first they thought it was too small to do much damage, but in fact, the iceberg was huge – about thirty metres higher than the ship. And then the ship hit it.
- B Why didn't everyone just get off the ship immediately?
- A Because they thought it was impossible for the *Titanic* to sink. So no one started to get the lifeboats out for an hour. To begin with, it was women and children first, but then people started to realize that there weren't enough lifeboats – there were only twenty – and a lot of people were going to die.
- B Wasn't there that incredible thing with the orchestra? Or is that just a story?
- A No, it's true. The orchestra continued playing until the ship sank, and the musicians, all of them, died. It took just two hours after hitting the iceberg for the ship to sink.
- B Incredible. How many people died?
- A About 1,500.
- B And how many survived?
- A 706.

T 10.7 see p85

T 10.8

- 1 Their house is such a mess! I don't know how they live in it.
- 2 There were so many people at my birthday party! We had to order more food.
- 3 I'm so hungry! I could eat a horse.
- 4 Noor and Nabeel are such nice people! But I can't stand their kids.
- 5 I've spent so much money this week! I don't know where it's all gone.
- 6 A present! For me? You're so kind! You really didn't have to.
- 7 We've had such a nice time! Thank you so much for inviting us.
- 8 Molly's such a clever child! She understands every word I say.

Unit 11

T 11.1 The history of paper

Today, paper is used for hundreds of everyday things – books and newspapers, of course, but also money, stamps, cups, bags, and even some clothes.

Long ago, before paper, people wrote on animal

skins, bones, and stones. Then in 2700 BC, the Egyptians started to make papyrus, which was similar to paper. But the first real paper was invented in AD 105 by a Chinese government official, Ts'ai Lun. It was made from a mixture of plants and cloth. The Chinese kept their invention secret for centuries. Finally, in the 10th century, paper was brought to Europe by the Arabs. The first European paper mill was built in Spain in 1150. Since the 18th century, most paper has been made out of wood, because it is much stronger than cloth. Nowadays, each person uses about 300 kg of paper every year. That's a lot of paper!

T 11.2

When was paper invented? in AD 105.
Where was the first real paper invented? In China.
Who was it invented by? Ts'ai Lun.
When was it brought to Europe by the Arabs? In the 10th century.
Where was the first paper mill built? In Spain.
How long has paper been made out of wood? Since the 18th century.
How much paper is used by each person every year? About 300 kg.

T 11.3

- Paper is only used to make newspapers and books.
No, it isn't. It is used to make hundreds of everyday things.
- All clothes are made out of paper.
No, they aren't. Only some are made out of paper.
- Before paper, people wrote on trees.
No, they didn't. They wrote on animal skins, bones, and stones.
- Paper was invented by a Chinese scientist.
No, it wasn't. It was invented by a Chinese government official.
- The Chinese gave their invention to the world immediately.
No, they didn't. They kept it secret for centuries.
- They made paper out of wood.
No, they didn't. They made it out of a mixture of plants and cloth.
- The first paper mill in Europe was built in France.
No, it wasn't. It was built in Spain.
- Paper has been made out of cloth since the 18th century.
No, it hasn't. It's been made out of wood.

T 11.4

- Do you always wear a watch?
Yes, all the time. Don't you?
- Are you good at telling jokes?
No, I'm hopeless. I can never remember the ending.
- What was the last present you gave? Who to?
Mmmm. I think it was when I gave some flowers to my mum for Mother's Day.
- What was the last phone call you made? Who to? Why?
Just before I came into class. I called a friend to ask if she was doing anything this evening.
- Do you keep a diary?
Yes, but I don't write very personal things in it, in case someone finds it.
- Have you or a friend ever made a complaint in a restaurant?

No – but my dad often complains. I find it embarrassing, but he says it's important to do it.

- Have you ever been homesick? Did you miss your family or your friends?
Oh, yes, when I went on an exchange to Germany when I was 16. I missed everybody.
- What is the best advice you've ever been given?
If you can't say anything nice, don't say anything at all.

T 11.5 The history of chewing gum

P = Presenter I = Interviewer

LW = Leanne Ward, chewing gum expert

AB = Interviewees

Part one

P Today in Worldly Wise, the world's most common habit ...
Yes, chewing gum. We chew 100,000 tons of it every year but how many of us actually know what it's made of?

I Excuse me, I see you're chewing gum ...

A Yeah.

I Have you got any idea what it's made of?

A Nah – no idea. Never thought about it.

I Have you any idea what chewing gum is made of?

B ... Er no, not a clue. Rubber maybe?

I And do you have any idea who invented it?

A The Americans?

B Yeah – sure – I reckon it was invented in America, yeah.

P Well no. It wasn't the Americans who invented chewing gum. It was the Swedes. The Swedes, I hear you say? But listen to Leanne Ward, a chewing gum expert.

LW The history of chewing goes back thousands of years. In Sweden in 1993, the skeleton of a teenager was found, he was nine thousand years old. And in his mouth was a gum made of tree sap and sweetened with honey – the first known chewing gum.

P It seems we've always chewed things of no real food value. Babies are born wanting to chew. Everything goes straight into their mouths. So why do we chew? Here's Leanne again.

LW We chew to clean our teeth and freshen our breath but also because we just like chewing. The ancient Greeks chewed a gum called *mastica*, which is a type of tree sap. They thought it was good for their health and women really enjoyed chewing it as a way to sweeten their breath. Then in the first century AD we know that the Mayan Indians in South America liked to chew a tree sap, called *chiclay*. They wrapped it in leaves and put it in their mouths so this was, if you like, the first packet of chewing gum. The American Indians also chewed tree sap – they gave it to the English when they arrived, but it wasn't until a few hundred years after, that it became really popular in America.

T 11.6 Part two

P The history of modern chewing gum begins in 19th century America. In 1892 a clever young salesman called William Wrigley decided that chewing gum was the thing of the future. Wrigley was a business genius. He was the first to use advertising to sell in a big way. Here's Leanne.

LW William Wrigley was really an advertising genius. He hired hundreds of pretty girls, who he called 'the Wrigley girls'. They walked up and down the streets of Chicago and New York City handing out free gum. Millions of pieces were given away. He also had huge electric signs and billboards – one billboard was a mile long, it ran along the side of the train track. So with all this, chewing gum became very popular all over the USA. I understand it was even taken into space by the first astronauts.

P So what exactly is it made of?

LW Well, the strangest thing about gum today is that nobody knows what it's made of. Nobody will tell you. The chewing gum industry keeps the recipe top secret.

T 11.7

- 'Are we nearly there yet, Dad?'
'No. It's miles to go, but we'll stop soon and have something to eat.'
- 'How much is it to send this letter to Australia?'
'Give it to me and I'll weigh it. That's ... £1.20.'
'OK. That's fine.'
- 'Hi. Can I pay for my petrol, please?'
'Which pump?'
'Er ... pump number ... five.'
'Forty-one pounds 78p, please.'
- The 7.56 from Bristol is now arriving at platform 4. Virgin Rail would like to apologize for the late arrival of this service. This was due to circumstances beyond our control.

Unit 12

T 12.1

If I were a princess, I'd live in a palace. I'd have servants to look after me. My mum would be Queen, and she wouldn't work. I wouldn't go to school. I'd have a private teacher. I'd ride a white horse, and I'd wear a long dress. I could have all the sweets I wanted.

T 12.2 see p96

T 12.3

- 'I have no money. What am I going to do?'
'If I were you, I'd try to spend less.'
'What do you mean?'
'Well, you buy a lot of clothes, designer clothes. Stop buying such expensive clothes.'
'But I like them!'
- 'My hair's awful. I can't do anything with it.'
'It's not that bad.'
'It is, really. Just look at it.'
'Well, if I were you, I'd try that new hairdresser, Antonio. He's supposed to be very good, and not that expensive.'
'Mmm. OK, I'll try it. Thanks.'
- 'I've got toothache.'
'Have you seen a dentist?'
'No.'
'Well, if I were you, I'd make an appointment right now.'
- 'I've had a row with my best friend.'
'What about?'

'Oh, she's angry because I lost one of her CDs.'
'Well, if I were you, I'd apologise and buy her a new one.'

'Yes, I'll do that.'

- 5 'My car won't start in the morning.'
'If I were you, I'd buy a new one. Yours is so old.'
'I know it's old, but I can't afford a new one.'
'Well, take it to a garage. Let them have a look at it.'
'All right.'
- 6 'My neighbours make a lot of noise.'
'Do they? That's awful.'
'Mmm. We can't get to sleep at night.'
'Have you spoken to them about this?'
'No, we're too frightened.'
'If I were you, I'd invite them round to your flat for coffee and say that you're having problems.'
'That's probably a good idea. I'm not sure they'll come, but I'll try it.'

T 12.4

Ruth

I'm having a holiday in Italy for a couple of weeks, staying in a villa in Tuscany. Then I'm going to look for a job. I want to work in the media – advertising or the BBC would be perfect.

My sister and I are going to buy a flat together, somewhere central, so we'll have to start looking soon. I'm very excited about the future. And I'm also highly ambitious!

Henry

I'm not sure yet. Some friends have invited me to go to Long Island with them, so I might go to America. I'll have to earn some money, so I might work in a restaurant for a bit.

I don't know what I want to do. I love France, so I might live in Paris for a while. I could earn some money painting portraits in Montmartre. Who knows? I might become a famous artist! Wouldn't that be wonderful!

T 12.5

- 1 A Excuse me! Can I get past?
B Pardon?
A Can I get past, please?
B I'm sorry. I didn't hear you. Yes, of course.
A Thanks a lot.
- 2 A I hear you're going to get married soon. Congratulations!
B That's right, next July. July 21. Can you come to the wedding?
A Oh, what a pity! That's when we're away on holiday.
C Never mind. We'll send you some wedding cake.
A That's very kind.
- 3 A Oh, dear! Look at the time! Hurry up, or we'll miss the train.
B Just a minute! I can't find my umbrella. Do you know where it is?
A I haven't a clue. But you won't need it. It's a lovely day. Just look at the sky!
B Oh, all right. Let's go, then.
- 4 A Good luck in your exam!
B Same to you. I hope we both pass.
A Did you go out last night?
B No, of course not. I went to bed early. What about you?
A Me, too. See you later, after the exam. Let's go for a pizza.
B Good idea.

Unit 13

T 13.1

- 1 How long have you been sleeping on the streets?
For a year. It was very cold at first, but you get used to it.
- 2 Why did you come to London?
I came here to look for work, and I never left.
- 3 How long have you been selling *The Big Issue*?
For six months. I'm in Covent Garden seven days a week selling the magazine.
- 4 Have you made many friends?
Lots. My problem is I'm homeless. I want a job, but I need somewhere to live before I can get a job. So I need money to get somewhere to live, but I can't get money because I can't get a job, and I can't get a job because I haven't got somewhere to live. So I'm trapped.
- 5 How many copies do you sell a day?
Usually about fifty.
- 6 How many copies have you sold today?
So far, ten. But it's still early.

T 13.2

How long have you been trying to find a job?
How many jobs have you had?
How long have you been standing here today?
How did you lose your business?
Who's your best friend?
Where did you meet him?
How long have you known each other?

T 13.3

- A How long have you been trying to find a job?
B For three years. It's been really difficult.
A How many jobs have you had?
B About thirty, maybe more. I've done everything.
- A How long have you been standing here today?
B Since 8.00 this morning, and I'm freezing.
- A How did you lose your business?
B I owed a lot of money in tax, and I couldn't pay it.
- A Who's your best friend?
B A chap called Robbie, who's also from Scotland, like me.
- A Where did you meet him?
B I met him here in London.
- A How long have you known each other?
B About ten months. I met him soon after I came to London.

T 13.4 see T13.5

T 13.5 Phoning home

- C = Craig M = His mother
C Hi, Mum. It's me, Craig.
M Craig! Hello! How lovely to hear from you. How are you? How's the new job going?
C Work's OK – I think. I'm just ... so ...
M Tired? You sound tired. Are you tired? What have you been doing?
C I am tired, really tired. I've been working so hard and everything's so new to me. I'm in the office until eight o'clock every night.
M Eight o'clock! Every night? That's terrible. And when do you eat? Have you been eating well?

C Yes, yes – I've been eating OK. After work, John and I go out for something to eat in the restaurant round the corner. We're too tired to cook.

M John? Who's John?

C We work together in the same office – he's been working here for a while, so he's been helping me a lot. He's really nice. You'd like him, Mum, he lives near me.

M Mmm. Your father says 'Hello'.

C Ah yes. Dad. How is he? What's he been doing recently?

M Well, he's just returned from a business trip to Holland, so he hasn't been to work today, he's been relaxing.

C Oh, yes of course. He's been working in Amsterdam, hasn't he? Well, I'm glad he's relaxing now. And what about you, Mum?

M Well, I was going to ring you actually. You see I'm coming to London next Tuesday. I'm going to a teachers' conference at the university, and I wondered if I could stay at your flat.

C Next Tuesday. That's great! Of course you can stay at my flat. I'll try to leave work earlier that day and I'll meet you after the conference. We'll go out for a meal.

M Lovely! I'm looking forward to it already.

C Me too. See you next week. Bye for now. Love to Dad!

M Bye, Craig. Take care.

T 13.6 See p109

T 13.7

307 4922
1-800-878-5311
315 253 6031
517 592 2122
212 726 6390

T 13.8

P = Peter J = John

- 1 P Hello. 793422.
J Hello, Peter. This is John.
P Hi, John. How are you?
J Fine, thanks. And you?
P All right. Did you have a nice weekend? You went away, didn't you?
J Yes, we went to see some friends who live in the country. It was lovely. We had a good time.
P Ah, good.
J Peter, could you do me a favour? I'm playing squash tonight, but my racket's broken. Could I borrow yours?
P Sure, that's fine.
J Thanks a lot. I'll come and get it in half an hour, if that's OK.
P Yes, I'll be in.
J OK. Bye.
P Bye.

A = Receptionist B = Student

C = Shereen, a teacher.

- 2 A Good morning. International School of English.
B Hello, could I speak to Shereen, please?
A Hold on. I'll connect you.
C Hello.
A Hello. Can I speak to Shereen, please?
C Speaking.
A Ah, hello. I saw your advertisement about English classes in a magazine. Could you

send me some information, please?

- C Certainly. Can I just take some details?
Could you give me your name and address, please?

A = Mike's flatmate B = Jim

- 3 A Hello.
B Hello. Is that Mike?
A No, I'm afraid he's out at the moment.
Can I take a message?
B Yes, please. Can you say that Jim phoned,
and I'll try again later. Do you know what
time he'll be back?
A In about an hour, I think.
B Thanks. Goodbye.
A Goodbye.

Unit 14

T 14.1 see p110

T 14.2 Listen and check

I was delighted because I'd passed all my exams.
I was hungry because I hadn't had any breakfast.
I went to bed early because I'd had a busy day.
Our teacher was angry because we hadn't done
the homework.
My leg hurt because I'd fallen over playing
football.
The plants died because I'd forgotten to water
them.
The road was wet because we'd had rain the
night before.

T 14.3 What does Ben say?

- 1 I like John very much.
2 I met him at university.
3 We're quite similar.
4 We've travelled a lot together.
5 I'm seeing John this evening.
6 I'll phone him to arrange a time.

T 14.4 What did Ben tell you?

see p112

T 14.5 An interview with Beth Taylor

I = Interviewer B = Beth

- I So, Beth, what was it like when you met
David?
B Well, I didn't know about him, but I'm
pleased that I know him now. We met each
other for the first time a few weeks ago, and
we have a lot in common.
I You now live in Oxford, is that right?
B Yes, I've been married twice. I now live with
my husband, Bruce, in Oxford. He's a
photographer.
I When are you seeing each other again?
B David's coming to see me next week, and he's
bringing his three children. I'm sure they'll
get on well with my children.

T 14.6

In an interview, Beth Taylor said that she had
never known about David, but she was pleased
that she knew him now. They had met each
other for the first time a few weeks ago, and they
had found they had a lot in common.

She told me she had been married twice, and
that she now lived in Oxford with her husband,
Bruce, who was a photographer.

She said that David was coming to see her
next week, and he was bringing his three
children. She was sure they would get on well
with her children.

T 14.7

- 1 A Goodbye, everyone! I'm going on holiday
tomorrow.
B Where are you going?
A Australia. I'm taking my family to visit
their cousins in Sydney.
B Lucky you! When you come back, bring
me a T-shirt!
2 A Listen, class! Please finish your work
before you go home. And tomorrow,
don't forget to bring in your money for
the school trip. We're going to the Natural
History Museum.
B Oh, Miss Jones! Can't you take us
somewhere more exciting?
3 A Martin, you were very late last night.
What time did you come home?
B It was before midnight, Mum, honest.
Mick brought me home in his car.
4 A I've been decorating my new flat. You
must come and visit me on Saturday. And
bring Emma and Jane with you. I'll cook
you a meal.
B Great! We'll bring some ice-cream for
dessert.
5 A I'll miss you when I go back home to
Morocco. You must come and visit me
next year.
B I'd love to! I want you to take this photo
with you. It will remind you of the day we
went to Oxford together.
A OK. And when you visit, bring me some
more English books to read!
6 A I'm going to London tomorrow, so
tonight my best friend is coming round to
my house to say goodbye. She's bringing a
present she wants me to take to her sister
in London.
B Well, have a good trip!

T 14.8

P = Patrick I = Interviewer

Patrick

- I Where are you from originally, Patrick?
P Well, my family is originally from Ireland. My
grandfather and his wife came to the United
States from Ireland in 1935. They came from
Cork, so they'd travelled from Cork to
Dublin by train, and then they took the boat
from Dublin to New York.
I I bet that was a long journey. How long? A
week?
P No, the journey took five days. They landed
in New York and stayed there for two years.
Then they moved to Philadelphia, where my
grandfather worked in the port. He was a
ship-builder. My grandmother washed
clothes, and she brought up the kids. My
father was born in Philadelphia in 1943, and
when he was sixteen they moved to
Pittsburgh. He'd finished school by then, and
he went to work in the factories.
I What was he doing?
P He was in the steel mills.
I When he was just sixteen?
P Oh, yes. They started young in those days.
Then he met and married my mother, Eileen,

and I was born, and my two sisters were
born. We all went to school in Philadelphia,
and now I work in the police force. I'm a
detective. Now Peggy, my wife, and I are
second generation Americans. I'm American,
my kids are American, and we love it!

D = Daniel I = Interviewer

Daniel

- I Where is your family from, Daniel?
D We're all from England. My dad's from the
north of England, and my mum's Scottish.
I And now you're all living in the Middle East?
D That's right, in Dubai, in the United Arab
Emirates.
I When did your family move abroad?
D Well, my parents left the UK in 1986 and
came to the Middle East because of my
father's job. He's in the oil industry. He works
for Shell – he's been with them for over
twenty years.
I And where did they live at first?
D First, er, first they were in Riyadh, the capital
of Saudi Arabia. Then they were in Jeddah,
on the coast, next to the Red Sea.
I How long had they been in Riyadh before
they moved?
D Erm ... let me think. I was born in Riyadh in
1987, and we moved when I was three, so
that makes it 1990 when we went to Jeddah,
so they'd been in Riyadh for four years ...
yeah, four years.
I And all this time your father worked for the
oil company?
D Yeah, he was an area manager. And my
mother was an English teacher. She taught at
the King Abdul Aziz University in Jeddah,
teaching first-year business students. Then
we all moved to Dubai in 1992, and we've
been here ever since.
I You have a sister, right?
D Yeah, Sasha. She's three years younger than
me.
I Where did you go to school?
D Well, there's an international British School
in Jeddah that we both went to. I'm now
studying at university, business studies, and
Sasha's still at school, another international
school here in Dubai. She wants to be a
doctor.
I Oh, really? That's great. And do you like it in
Dubai?
D Sure! It's a great life. The climate's ideal, and
there's lots to do as long as you've got some
money in your pocket!

T 14.9 Saying goodbye

- a Goodbye! Drive carefully and call us when
you get there!
b Bye! See you later. Are you doing anything
tonight?
c Goodbye! Have a safe journey. Send us a
postcard!
d Goodbye. Here's my number. Please get in
touch if you have any problems with it.
e Goodbye. It has been most interesting talking
to you. We'll let you know by post.
f Goodbye! Good luck in the future. I've really
enjoyed our lessons together!
g Bye-bye! Thank you very much for having
me.
h Goodbye. Thank you for a lovely evening.
You must come to us next time.

Grammar Reference

Unit 1

1.1 Tenses

This unit has examples of the Present Simple and Present Continuous, the Past Simple, and two future forms: *going to* and the Present Continuous for the future.

All these tenses are covered again in later units.

Present tenses Unit 2

Past tenses Unit 3

Future forms Units 5 and 9

The aim in this unit is to revise what you know.

Present tenses

He **lives** with his parents.

She **speaks** three languages.

I'm **enjoying** the course.

They're **studying** at university.

Past tense

He **went** to America last year.

She **came** to England three years ago.

Future forms

I'm **going to work** as an interpreter.

What are you **doing** tonight?

1.2 Questions

Questions with question words

- 1 Questions can begin with a question word.

what	where	which	how
who	when	why	whose

Where's the station?

Why are you laughing?

Whose is this coat?

How does she go to work?

- 2 *What*, *which*, and *whose* can be followed by a noun.

What size do you take?

What sort of music do you like?

Which coat is yours?

Whose book is this?

- 3 *Which* is generally used when there is a limited choice.

Which is your husband? The blond one or the dark one?

This rule is not always true.

What newspaper do you read?

Which

- 4 *How* can be followed by an adjective or an adverb.

How big is his new car?

How fast does it go?

How can also be followed by *much* or *many*.

How much is this sandwich?

How many brothers and sisters have you got?

Questions with no question word

The answer to these questions is *Yes* or *No*.

Are you hot? Yes, I am./No, I'm not.

Is she working? Yes, she is./No, she isn't.

Does he smoke? Yes, he does./No, he doesn't.

Can you swim? Yes, I can./No, I can't.

Form

Verb forms with an auxiliary verb

Positive	Question
She is reading.	Is she reading?
They are watching a film.	What are they watching?
She can drive.	Can she drive?

Verb forms with no auxiliary verb

In the Present Simple and the Past Simple there is no auxiliary verb in the positive.

They **live** in London.

He **arrived** yesterday.

Do/does/did is used in the question.

Do they live in London?

Where **does** Bill come from?

When **did** he arrive?

Unit 2

2.1 Present Simple

Form

Positive and negative

I We You They	live don't live	near here.
He She It	lives doesn't live	

Question

Where	do	I we you they	live?
	does	he she it	

Short answer

Do you like Peter?	Yes, I do.
Does she speak French?	No, she doesn't.

Use

The Present Simple is used to express:

- a habit.
I **get up** at 7.30.
Cinda **smokes** too much.
- a fact which is always true.
Vegetarians **don't eat** meat.
We **come** from Spain.
- a fact which is true for a long time.
I **live** in Oxford.
She **works** in a bank.

2.2 Present Continuous

Form

am/is/are + -ing (present participle)

Positive and negative

I	'm (am) 'm not	working.
He She It	's (is) isn't	
We You They	're (are) aren't	

Question

What	am	I	wearing?
	is	he she it	
	are	we you they	

Short answer

Are you going?	Yes, I am./No, I'm not.	NOT Yes, I'm . Yes, she's .
Is Anna working?	Yes, she is./No, she isn't.	

Use

The Present Continuous is used to express:

- an activity happening now.
They're **playing** football in the garden.
She can't answer the phone because she's **washing** her hair.
- an activity happening around now, but perhaps not at the moment of speaking.
She's **studying** maths at university.
I'm **reading** a good book by Henry James.
- a planned future arrangement.
I'm **meeting** Miss Boyd at ten o'clock tomorrow.
What are you **doing** this evening?

2.3 Present Simple and Present Continuous

- Look at the wrong sentences, and compare them with the correct sentences.

X	Hans is coming from Germany.
✓	Hans comes from Germany.
X	This is a great wedding party. Everyone has a good time.
✓	This is a great wedding party. Everyone is having a good time.
X	I read a good book at the moment.
✓	I'm reading a good book at the moment.

- There are some verbs that are usually used in the Present Simple only. They express a state, not an activity.

✓	I like coffee.
X	I'm liking coffee.

Other verbs like this are *think, agree, understand, love*.

2.4 have/have got

Form

Positive

I We You They	have 've got	two brothers.
He She	has 's got	

Negative

I We You They	don't have haven't got	any money.
He She	doesn't have hasn't got	

Question

Do	I we you they	have a car?	Have	I we you they	got a car?
Does	he she		Has	he she	

Short answer

Do you have a camera?	Yes, I do./No, I don't.
Have you got a camera?	Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

We can use contractions ('ve and 's) with *have got*, but not with *have*.
I've got a sister.

I have a sister. NOT I've a sister.

Use

- Have* and *have got* mean the same. *Have got* is informal. We use it a lot when we speak, but not when we write.
Have you got a light?
The Prime Minister has a meeting with the President today.
In American English, *have + do/does* is much more common.
- Have* and *have got* express possession.

I have I've got	a new car. three children. blond hair.
She has She's got	
He has He's got	

- When *have + noun* expresses an activity or a habit, *have* and the *do/does/don't/doesn't* forms are used. *Have got* is not used. Compare these sentences.

X	I've got a shower in the morning.
✓	I have a shower in the morning.
X	What time have you got lunch?
✓	What time do you have lunch?
X	He has never got milk in his coffee.
✓	He never has milk in his coffee.

- In the past tense, the *got* forms are unusual. *Had* with *did* and *didn't* is much more common.

I had a bicycle when I was young.

My parents had a lot of books in the house.

Did you have a nice weekend?

I didn't have any money when I was a student.

Unit 3

3.1 Past Simple

Spelling

- The normal rule is to add *-ed*.
worked started
If the verb ends in *-e*, add *-d*.
lived loved
 - If the verb has only one syllable + one vowel + one consonant, double the consonant.
stopped planned
 - If the verb ends in a consonant + *-y*, change the *-y* to *-ied*.
studied carried
- There are many common irregular verbs. See the list on p143.

Form

The form of the Past Simple is the same for all persons.

Positive

I He/She/It We You They	finished arrived went	yesterday.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------	------------

Negative

The negative of the Past Simple is formed with *didn't*.

He walked.

He didn't walk.

I He/She/It We You They	didn't (did not)	arrive yesterday.
-------------------------------------	------------------	-------------------

Question

The question in the Past Simple is formed with *did*.

She finished.

When did she finish?

When did	she you they etc.	arrive?
----------	----------------------------	---------

Short answer

Did you go to work yesterday?	Yes, I did.
Did it rain last night?	No, it didn't.

Use

- The Past Simple expresses a past action that is now finished.
We **played** tennis last Sunday.
I **worked** in London from 1994 to 1999.
John **left** two minutes ago.
- Notice the time expressions that are used with the Past Simple.

I did it	last year.
	last month.
	five years ago.
	yesterday morning.
	in 1985.

3.2 Past Continuous

Form

was/were + -ing
(present participle)

Positive and negative

I	was	working.
He	wasn't (was not)	
She		
It		
We	were	
You	weren't (were not)	
They		

Question

What	was	I he she it	doing?
	were	we you they	

Short answer

Were you working yesterday?	Yes, I was.
Was she studying when you arrived?	No, she wasn't.

Use

- The Past Continuous expresses a past activity that has duration.
I met her while I **was living** in Paris.
You **were making** a lot of noise last night.
What **were you doing**?
- The activity began *before* the action expressed by the Past Simple.
She **was making** coffee when we arrived.
When I phoned Simon he **was having** dinner.
- The Past Continuous expresses an activity in progress before, and probably after, a time in the past.
When I woke up this morning, the sun **was shining**.
What **were you doing** at 8.00 last night?

3.3 Past Simple and Past Continuous

- The Past Simple expresses past actions as simple facts.
I **did** my homework last night.
'What **did** you **do** yesterday evening?' 'I **watched** TV.'
- The Past Continuous gives past activities time and duration. The activity can be interrupted.
'What **were** you **doing** at 8.00?' 'I **was watching** TV.'
I **was doing** my homework when Jane arrived.
- In stories, the Past Continuous can describe the scene. The Past Simple tells the action.
It **was** a beautiful day. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**, so we **decided** to go for a picnic. We **put** everything in the car ...
- The questions below refer to different time periods. The Past Continuous asks about activities before, and the Past Simple asks about what happened after.

What were you doing	when it started to rain?	We were playing tennis.
What did you do		We went home.

3.4 Prepositions in time expressions

at	in	no preposition
at six o'clock at midnight at New Year at the weekend	in the morning/afternoon/evening in December in summer in 1995 in two weeks' time	today yesterday tomorrow the day after tomorrow the day before yesterday last night last week two weeks ago next month yesterday evening tomorrow evening this evening tonight
on		
on Saturday on Monday morning on New Year's Day on January 18		

Unit 4

4.1 Expressions of quantity

Count and uncount nouns

- 1 It is important to understand the difference between count and uncount nouns.

Count nouns	Uncount nouns
a cup	water
a girl	sugar
an apple	milk
an egg	music
a pound	money

We can say *three cups, two girls, ten pounds*. We can count them. We cannot say ~~two waters, three musics, one money~~. We cannot count them.

- 2 Count nouns can be singular or plural.

This **cup** is full.

These **cups** are empty.

Uncount nouns can only be singular.

The **water** is cold.

The **weather** was terrible.

much and many

- 1 We use *much* with uncount nouns in questions and negatives.
How **much money** have you got?
There isn't **much milk** left.
- 2 We use *many* with count nouns in questions and negatives.
How **many people** were at the meeting?
I didn't take **many photos** on holiday.

some and any

- 1 *Some* is used in positive sentences.
I'd like **some** sugar.
- 2 *Any* is used in questions and negatives.
Is there **any** sugar in this tea?
Have you got **any** brothers and sisters?
We don't have **any** washing-up liquid.
I didn't buy **any** apples.
- 3 We use *some* in questions that are requests or offers.
Can I have **some** cake?
Would you like **some** tea?
- 4 The rules are the same for the compounds *someone, anything, anybody, somewhere*, etc.
I've got **something** for you.
Hello? Is **anybody** here?
There isn't **anywhere** to go in my town.

a few and a little

- 1 We use *a few* with count nouns.
There are **a few cigarettes** left, but not many.
- 2 We use *a little* with uncount nouns.
Can you give me **a little help**?

a lot/lots of

- 1 We use *a lot/lots of* with both count and uncount nouns.
There's **a lot of butter**.
I've got **lots of friends**.
- 2 *A lot/lots of* can be used in questions and negatives.
Are there **lots of tourists** in your country?
There isn't **a lot of butter**, but there's enough.

4.2 Articles – *a* and *the*

- 1 The indefinite article *a* or *an* is used with singular, countable nouns to refer to a thing or an idea for the first time.
We have **a Toyota** and **a BMW**.
There's **a supermarket** in Adam Street.
- 2 The definite article *the* is used with singular and plural, countable and uncountable nouns when both the speaker and the listener know the thing or idea already.
We have a Toyota and a BMW. I drive **the Toyota** and my wife drives **the BMW**.
I'm going to **the supermarket**. Do you want anything? (We both know which supermarket.)

Indefinite article

The indefinite article is used:

- 1 with professions.
I'm **a teacher**.
She's **an architect**.
- 2 with some expressions of quantity.
a pair of a little a couple of a few
- 3 in exclamations with *what* + a count noun.
What a lovely day!
What a pity!

Definite article

The definite article is used:

- 1 before seas, rivers, hotels, theatres, museums, and newspapers.
the Atlantic the British Museum
The Times the Ritz
- 2 if there is only one of something.
the sun the Queen the Government
- 3 with superlative adjectives.
He's **the richest man** in the world.
Jane's **the oldest** in the class.

No article

There is no article:

- 1 before plural and uncountable nouns when talking about things in general.
I like potatoes.
Milk is good for you.
- 2 before countries, towns, streets, languages, magazines, meals, airports, stations, and mountains.
I had lunch with John.
I bought a newspaper at Heathrow Airport.
- 3 before some places and with some forms of transport.

at home in/to bed at/to work at/to school/university by bus by plane by car by train on foot

She goes to work by bus.

I was at home yesterday evening.

- 4 in exclamations with *what* + an uncount noun.

What beautiful weather!

What loud music!

Note

In the phrase *go home*, there is no article and no preposition.

I went home early. NOT ~~I went to home~~.

Unit 5

5.1 Verb patterns 1

Here are four verb patterns. There is a list of verb patterns on p143.

- Verb + *to* + infinitive
They **want to buy** a new car.
I'd **like to go** abroad.
- Verb + *-ing*
Everyone **loves going** to nice restaurants.
He **finished reading** his book.
- Verb + *-ing* or + *to* + infinitive with no change in meaning
It **began to rain/raining**.
I **continued to work/working** in the library.
- Verb + preposition + *-ing*
We're **thinking of moving** house.
I'm **looking forward to having** more free time.

5.2 like doing and would like to do

- Like doing* and *love doing* express a general enjoyment.
I **like working** as a teacher. = I am a teacher and I enjoy it.
I **love taking photos**. = This is one of my hobbies.
- Would like to do* and *would love to do* express a preference now or at a specific time.
I'd **like to be** a teacher. = When I grow up, I want to be a teacher.
Thank you. I'd **love to go**. = You're going to a lecture. I'm pleased that you asked me.

Question

Short answer

Would you like to go for coffee?	Yes, I would./Yes, I'd love to.
Would you like to come for a walk?	Yes, I would./No, thank you.

Note

No, I wouldn't is not common because it is impolite.

5.3 will

Form

will + infinitive without *to*

Will is a modal auxiliary verb. There is an introduction to modal auxiliary verbs on p137 of the Grammar Reference. The forms of *will* are the same for all persons.

Positive and negative

I	'll (will)	come.
He/She/It	won't	help you.
We/You/They		invite Tom.

Question

When will	he	help me?
	you	
	they	

Short answer

Will you help me?	Yes, I will.
-------------------	--------------

Note

No, I won't is not common because it is impolite. It means 'I don't want to help you.'

A polite way of saying 'no' here is 'I'm afraid I can't.'

Use

Will is used:

- to express a future decision or intention made *at the moment of speaking*.
'It's Jane's birthday.' 'Is it? I'll **buy** her some flowers.'
I'll **give** you my phone number.
'Which do you want? The blue or the red?'
I'll **take** the red, thank you.
- to express an offer.
I'll **carry** your suitcase.
We'll **do** the washing-up.

Other uses of *will* are covered in Unit 9.

going to

Form

am/is/are + *going to* + infinitive

Positive and negative

I	'm (am)		
	'm not		
He	's (is)		
She			
It	isn't		going to work.
We	're (are)		
You			
They	aren't		

Question

	am	I	
		he	
When	is	she	
		it	going to arrive?
	are	we	
		you	
		they	

Short answer

Are they going to get married?	Yes, they are./No, they aren't.
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

Use

Going to is used:

- to express a future decision, intention, or plan made *before* the moment of speaking.
How long **are they going to stay** in Rome?
She **isn't going to have** a birthday party.

Note

The Present Continuous can be used in a similar way for a plan or arrangement, particularly with the verbs *go* and *come*.

She's **coming** on Friday.

I'm **going** home early tonight.

- when we can see or feel now that something is certain to happen in the future.

Look at these clouds! It's **going to rain**.

Watch out! That box is **going to fall**.

will or going to?

Look at the use of *will* and *going to* in these sentences.

I'm **going to make** a chicken casserole for dinner.

(I decided this morning and bought everything for it.)

What shall I cook for dinner? Er ... I know! I'll **make** chicken casserole! That's a good idea!

(I decided at the moment of speaking.)

Unit 6

6.1 What ... like?

Form

what + to be + subject + like?

What	's (is) your teacher are his parents was your holiday were the beaches	like?	She's very patient. They're very kind. Wonderful. We swam a lot. OK, but some were dirty.
------	--	-------	---

Note

We don't use *like* in the answer.

She's patient. NOT ~~She's like patient.~~

Use

What ... like? means 'Describe somebody or something. Tell me about them. I don't know anything about them.'

Like in this question is a preposition, not a verb:

'What's Jim like?' 'He's intelligent and kind, and he's got lovely blue eyes.'

In the following sentences *like* is a verb:

'What does Jim like?' 'He likes motorbikes and playing tennis.'

Note

How's your father? asks about health. It doesn't ask for a description.

'How's your father?' 'He's very well, thank you.'

6.2 Comparative and superlative adjectives

Form

- Look at the chart.

		Comparative	Superlative
Short adjectives	cheap small *big	cheaper smaller bigger	cheapest smallest biggest
Adjectives that end in -y	funny early heavy	funnier earlier heavier	funniest earliest heaviest
Adjectives with two syllables or more	careful boring expensive interesting	more careful more boring more expensive more interesting	most careful most boring most expensive most interesting
Irregular adjectives	far good bad	further better worse	furthest best worst

* Short adjectives with one vowel + one consonant double the consonant:

hot/hotter/hottest, fat/fatter/fattest.

- Than* is often used after a comparative adjective.

I'm **younger than** Barbara.

Barbara's **more intelligent than** Sarah.

Much can come before the comparative to give emphasis.

She's **much nicer than** her sister.

Is Tokyo **much more modern than** London?

- The* is used before superlative adjectives.

He's **the funniest** boy in the class.

Which is **the tallest** building in the world?

Use

- We use comparatives to compare one thing, person, or action with another.

She's **taller** than me.

London's **more expensive** than Rome.

- We use superlatives to compare somebody or something with the whole group.

She's **the tallest** in the class.

It's **the most expensive** hotel in the world.

- As ... as* shows that something is the same or equal.

Jim's **as tall as** Peter.

I'm **as worried as** you are.

- Not as/so ... as* shows that something isn't the same or equal.

She **isn't as tall as** her mother.

My car **wasn't so expensive as** yours.

Unit 7

7.1 Present Perfect

Form

have/has + -ed (past participle)

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed. There are many common irregular verbs. See the list on p143.

Positive and negative

I We/You/They	've (have) haven't	worked in a factory.
He/She/It	's (has) hasn't	

Question

Have	I we/you/they	been to the United States?
Has	he/she/it	

Short answer

Have you been to Egypt?	Yes, I have./No, I haven't.
Has she ever written poetry?	Yes, she has./No, she hasn't.

Note

We cannot use *I've*, *they've*, *he's*, etc. in short answers.

Yes, I **have**. NOT ~~Yes, I've~~.

Yes, we **have**. NOT ~~Yes, we've~~.

Use

- 1 The Present Perfect looks back from the present into the past, and expresses what has happened before now. The action happened at an indefinite time in the past.

I've **met** a lot of famous people. (before now)

She **has won** awards. (in her life)

She's **written** twenty books. (up to now)

The action can continue to the present, and probably into the future.

She's **lived** here for twenty years. (she still lives here)

- 2 The Present Perfect expresses an experience as part of someone's life.

I've **travelled** a lot in Africa.

They've **lived** all over the world.

Ever and *never* are common with this use.

Have you **ever** been in a car crash?

My mother has **never** flown in a plane.

- 3 The Present Perfect expresses an action or state which began in the past and continues to the present.

I've **known** Alice for six years.

How long **have** you **worked** as a teacher?

Note that the time expressions *for* and *since* are common with this use. We use *for* with a period of time, and *since* with a point in time.

We've lived here **for** two years. (a period of time)

I've had a beard **since** I left the army. (a point in time)

Note

In many languages, this use is expressed by a present tense. But in English, we say:

Peter **has been** a teacher for ten years.

NOT ~~Peter is a teacher for ten years.~~

- 4 The Present Perfect expresses a past action with results in the present. It is often a recent past action.

I've **lost** my wallet. (I haven't got it now.)

The taxi's **arrived**. (It's outside the door now.)

Has the postman **been**? (Are there any letters for me?)

The adverbs *just*, *already*, and *yet* are common with this use. *Yet* is used in questions and negatives.

She's **just** had some good news.

I've **already** had breakfast.

Has the postman **been yet**?

It's 11.00 and she **hasn't** got up **yet**.

7.2 Present Perfect and Past Simple

- 1 Compare the Past Simple and Present Perfect.

Past Simple

- 1 The Past Simple refers to an action that happened at a definite time in the past.

He **died** in 1882.

She **got** married when she was 22.

The action is finished.

I **lived** in Paris for a year (but not now).

- 2 Time expressions + the Past Simple

in 1999.

last week.

I did it **two months ago**.

on March 22.

for two years.

Present Perfect

- 1 The Present Perfect refers to an action that happened at an indefinite time in the past.

She **has won** awards.

She's **written** twenty books.

The action can continue to the present.

She's **lived** there for twenty years (and she still does.)

- 2 Time expressions + the Present Perfect

for twenty years.

I've worked here **since** 1995.

since I left school.

We've **never** been to America.

- 2 Compare these sentences.

X	I've broken my leg last year.
✓	I broke my leg last year.
X	He works as a musician all his life.
✓	He has worked as a musician all his life.
X	When have you been to Greece?
✓	When did you go to Greece?
X	How long do you have your car?
✓	How long have you had your car?

Unit 8

8.1 have to

Form

has/have + to + infinitive

Positive and negative

I We You They	have don't have	to	work hard.
He She It	has doesn't have		

Question

Do	I we you they	have to	work hard?
Does	he she it		

Short answer

Do you have to wear a uniform?	Yes, I do.
Does he have to go now?	No, he doesn't.

Note

- The past tense of *have to* is *had to*, with *did* and *didn't* in the question and the negative.
I **had to** get up early this morning.
Why **did** you **have to** work last weekend?
They liked the hotel because they **didn't have to** do any cooking.
- The forms of *have got to* + infinitive are the same as *have to* + noun. See p131.

Use

- Have to* expresses strong obligation. The obligation comes from 'outside' – perhaps a law, a rule at school or work, or someone in authority.
You **have to** have a driving licence if you want to drive a car. (That's the law.)
I **have to** start work at 8.00. (My company says I must.)
The doctor says I **have to** do more exercise.
- Don't/doesn't have to* expresses absence of obligation (it isn't necessary).
You **don't have to** do the washing-up. I've got a dishwasher.
She **doesn't have to** work on Monday. It's her day off.

8.2 Introduction to modal auxiliary verbs

Form

These are modal auxiliary verbs.

can	could	might	must
shall	should	will	would

They are looked at in different units of Headway.

They have certain things in common:

- They 'help' another verb. The verb form is the infinitive without *to*.
She **can** drive.
I **must** get my hair cut.

- There is no *do/does* in the question.
Can she sing?
Should I go home now?
 - The form is the same for all persons. There is no *-s* in the third person singular:
He **can** sing very well.
She **should** try harder.
It **will** rain soon.
 - To form the negative, add *n't*. There is no *don't/doesn't*.
I **wouldn't** like to be a teacher.
You **mustn't** steal.
- Note**
will not = *won't*.
It **won't** rain tomorrow.
- Most modal verbs refer to the present and future.
Only *can* has a past tense form, *could*.
I **could** swim when I was three.

8.3 should

Form

should + infinitive without *to*

The forms of *should* are the same for all persons.

Positive and negative

I He We They	should do more exercise. shouldn't tell lies.
-----------------------	--

Question

Should	I she they	see a doctor?
Do you think	I he we	should see a doctor?

Short answer

Should I phone home?	Yes, you should.
Should I buy a Mercedes Benz?	No, you shouldn't.

Use

Should is used to express what the speaker thinks is right or the best thing to do. It expresses mild obligation, or advice.

I **should** do more work. (This is my opinion.)
You **should** do more work. (I'm telling you what I think.)
Do you think we **should** stop here? (I'm asking you for your opinion.)

Shouldn't expresses negative advice.

You **shouldn't** sit so close to the TV. It's bad for your eyes.

Note

Should expresses the opinion of the speaker, and it is often introduced by *I think* or *I don't think*.

I **think** politicians **should** listen more.
I **don't think** people **should** get married until they're 21.

8.4 must

Form

must + infinitive without *to*

The forms of *must* are the same for all persons.

Positive and negative

I	
He	must try harder.
We	mustn't steal.
They	

Questions with *must* are possible, but the use of *have to* is more common.

Question	Short answer
Must I take exams?	Yes, you must.
Do I have to take exams?	Yes, you do.

Use

- Must* expresses strong obligation. Generally, this obligation comes from 'inside' the speaker.
I **must** get my hair cut. (I think this is necessary.)
- Because *must* expresses the authority of the speaker, you should be careful of using *You must ...*. It sounds very bossy!
You **must** help me. (I am giving you an order.)
Could you help me? is much better.
- You must ...* can express a strong suggestion.
You **must** see the modern art exhibition. It's wonderful.
You **must** give me a ring when you're next in town.

Unit 9

9.1 Time clauses

- Look at this sentence.
I'll give her a ring when I get home.
It consists of two clauses: a main clause *I'll give her a ring* and a secondary clause *when I get home*.
- These conjunctions of time introduce secondary clauses.

when while as soon as after before until

They are not usually followed by a future form. They refer to future time, but we use a present tense.

When I get home, I'll ...

While we're away, ...

As soon as I hear from you, ...

Wait here **until** I get back.

9.2 will

Form

For the forms of *will*, see p134.

Use

- Will* expresses a decision or intention made at the moment of speaking.
Give me your case. I'll carry it for you.
- It also expresses a future fact. The speaker thinks 'This action is sure to happen in the future'.
United **will** win the cup.
Tomorrow's weather **will** be warm and sunny.
This use is like a neutral future tense. The speaker is predicting the future, without expressing an intention, plan, or personal judgement.

9.3 First conditional

Form

if + Present Simple, *will* + infinitive without *to*

Positive and negative

if	I work hard, I she has enough money, she we don't hurry up, we you're late, I	'll (will) won't	pass my exams. buy a new car. be late. wait for you.
-----------	--	---------------------	---

Question

What Where	will	you do she go	if	you don't go to university? she can't find a job?
---------------	------	------------------	-----------	--

Short answer

Will you go to university if you pass your exams?	Yes, I will. No, I won't.
If we look after the planet, will we survive?	Yes, we will. No, we won't.

Note

The condition clause *if ...* can come at the beginning of the sentence or at the end. If it comes at the beginning, we put a comma at the end of the clause. If it comes at the end, we do not use a comma.

If I work hard, I'll pass my exams.

I'll pass my exams if I work hard.

Use

- The first conditional is used to express a possible condition and a probable result in the future.
If my cheque **comes**, I'll **buy** us all a meal.
You'll **get** wet if you **don't take** an umbrella.
What'll **happen** to the environment if we **don't look after** it?

Note

- English uses a present tense in the condition clause, not a future form.

If it **rains** ... NOT If it ~~will rain~~ ...

If I **work** hard ... NOT If I ~~will work~~ hard ...

- If* expresses a possibility that something will happen; *when* expresses what the speaker sees as certain to happen.

If I find your book, I'll send it to you.

When I get home, I'll have a bath.

Unit 10

10.1 Verb patterns 2

Verb patterns were first covered in Unit 5. There is a list of verb patterns on p143.

- Verb + *to* + infinitive
They **managed to escape**.
I **try to visit** somewhere new.
We **decided to go** abroad.
- go* + *-ing* for sports and activities
Let's **go skiing**.
We **went swimming**.
- Verb + sb + infinitive without *to*
My teachers **made me work** hard.
My parents **let me go out** when I want.

10.2 *used to*

Form

used + *to* + infinitive

Used to is the same in all persons.

Positive and negative

I	used to	smoke.
She	didn't use to	like cooking.
We		
They		

Question

What did you use to do?

Short answer

Did you use to smoke a lot? Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

Note

- The question form is not often used. We ask a question in the Past Simple, and reply using *used to*.
Where **did you go** on holiday when you were young?
We **used to go** camping in France.
- Never* is often used.
I **never used to** watch TV.
- Be careful not to confuse *to use* (e.g. *I use a knife to cut an apple.*) and *used to*.
The pronunciation is also different.
to use /ju:z/ *used to* /ju:stu:/ or /ju:stə/

Use

Used to is used:

- to express a past habit.
He **used to** play football every Saturday, but now he doesn't.
- to express a past state.
They **used to** be happy together, but now they fight all the time.

10.3 *used to* and the Past Simple

- The Past Simple can also be used to express a past habit or state.
He **played** football every Sunday when he **was** a boy.
They **were** happy together when they **were** first married.
- Only the Past Simple can be used for actions which happened once in the past.
We used to go to France every summer, but once, in 1987, we **went** to Greece.
Last night I **stayed** at home.

Note

Used to has no equivalent in the present. The Present Simple is used for present habits and states.

She **lives** in New York.

She sometimes **comes** to London on business.

10.4 Infinitives

- Infinitives are used to express purpose. They answer the question *Why ... ?* This use is very common in English.
I'm learning English **to get** a good job.
She's saving her money **to buy** a car.
I'm going to Scotland **to visit** my parents.

Note

Some languages express this idea of purpose with a translation of *for* + infinitive. English does not use *for*.

I came here **to learn** English.

NOT I came here ~~for to~~ learn English.

I came here ~~for~~ learn English.

- Infinitives are used after certain adjectives.

I'm	pleased surprised	to see you.
It's	hard important impossible	to learn Chinese.

- Infinitives are used after the question words *who*, *what*, *where*, *how*, etc.
Can you tell me **how to get** to the station?
I don't know **who to speak** to.
Show me **what to do**.
- Infinitives are used after the compounds *something*, *nothing*, *nowhere*, *anybody*, etc.
Have **something to eat**!
I've got **nothing to do**.
There's **nowhere to hide**.
Is there **anyone to talk** to?

Unit 11

11.1 The passive

Form

am/is/are
was/were
has/have been
will

+ -ed (past participle)

The past participle of regular verbs ends in *-ed*. There are many common irregular verbs. See the list on p143.

Present

Positive and negative

English **is spoken** all over the world.
Renault cars **are made** in France.
My children **aren't helped** with their homework.
Coffee **isn't grown** in England.

Question

Where is rice **grown**?
Are cars **made** in your country?

Past

Positive and negative

My car **was stolen** last night.
The animals **were frightened** by a loud noise.
He **wasn't injured** in the accident.
The thieves **weren't seen** by anyone.

Question

How **was** the window **broken**?
Were the plants **watered** last night?

Present Perfect

Positive and negative

I've **been robbed**!
Diet cola **has been made** since 1982.
They **haven't been invited** to the party.

Question

How many times **have you been hurt** playing football?
Has my car **been repaired**?

will

Positive and negative

10,000 cars **will be produced** next year.
The cars **won't be sold** in the UK.

Question

Will the children **be sent** to a new school?

Short answer

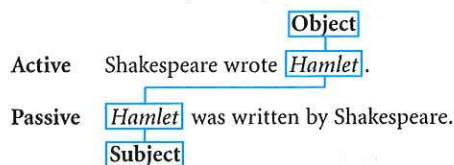
Are cars made in your country?	Yes, they are./No, they aren't.
Were the plants watered last night?	Yes, they were./No, they weren't.
Has my car been repaired?	Yes, it has./No, it hasn't.
Will these cars be produced next year?	Yes, they will./No, they won't.

Note

- The rules for tense usage in the passive are the same as in the active.
Present Simple to express habit:
My car **is serviced** regularly.
Past Simple to express a finished action in the past:
America **was discovered** by Christopher Columbus.
Present Perfect to express an action which began in the past and continues to the present:
Diet cola **has been made** since 1982.
- The passive infinitive (*to be* + *-ed*) is used after modal auxiliary verbs and other verbs which are followed by an infinitive.
Driving should **be banned** in city centres.
The house is going **to be knocked down**.

Use

- The object of an active verb becomes the subject of a passive verb. Notice the use of *by* in the passive sentence.



- The passive is not another way of expressing the same sentence in the active. We choose the active or the passive depending on what we are more interested in.
Hamlet was written in 1600. (We are more interested in *Hamlet*.)
Shakespeare *wrote* comedies, histories, and tragedies. (We are more interested in Shakespeare.)

Note

Some verbs, for example, *give*, *send*, *show*, have two objects, a person and a thing.
She **gave me a book** for my birthday.
In the passive, we often make the person the subject, not the thing.
I was given a book for my birthday.
She was sent the information by post.
You'll be shown where to sit.

Unit 12

12.1 Second conditional

Form

if + Past Simple, *would* + infinitive without *to*

Would is a modal auxiliary verb. There is an introduction to modal auxiliary verbs on p137.

The forms of *would* are the same for all persons.

Positive and negative

If	I had more money, I she knew the answer, she we lived in Russia, we I didn't have so many debts, I	'd (would) wouldn't	buy a CD player. tell us. soon learn Russian. have to work so hard.
----	--	------------------------	--

Question

What Which countries	would	you do you go to	if	you had a year off? you travelled round the world?
-------------------------	-------	---------------------	----	---

Short answer

Would you travel round the world? If they had the money, would they buy a new car?	Yes, I would./No, I wouldn't. Yes, they would./No, they wouldn't.
---	--

Note

- The condition clause can come at the beginning or the end of the sentence.
If it comes at the beginning, we put a comma at the end of the clause. If it comes at the end, we do not use a comma.
If I had more time, I'd help.
I'd help if I had more time.
- Were* is often used instead of *was* in the condition clause.
If I **were** you, I'd go to bed.
If he **were** cleverer, he'd know he was making a mistake.

Use

The second conditional is used to express an unreal or improbable condition and its probable result in the present or future.

The condition is unreal because it is different from the facts that we know. We can always say 'But ...'.

If I **were** Prime Minister, I'd **increase** tax for rich people. (But I'm not Prime Minister.)

If I **lived** in a big house, I'd **invite** all my friends. (But I live in a small house.)

What **would** you **do** if you **saw** a UFO? (But I don't expect that you will see a UFO.)

Note

- The use of the past tense (If I had) and *would* does not refer to past time. Both the first and second conditional refer to the present and the future. The past verb forms are used to show 'This is different from reality'.
If I **win** the tennis match, I'll **be** happy. (I think I have a good chance.)
If I **won** a thousand pounds, I'd ... (But I don't think I will.)
- We do not use *would* in the condition clause.
If the weather **was** nice ... NOT If the weather ~~would be~~ nice ...
If I **had** more money ... NOT If I ~~would have~~ more money ...

12.2 might

Form

might + infinitive without *to*

Might is a modal auxiliary verb. For an introduction to modal auxiliary verbs, see p137. The forms of *might* are the same for all persons.

Positive and negative

I He It We	might might not	go to the library. be late. rain tomorrow. go out for a meal tonight.
---------------------	--------------------	--

Question

The inverted question *Might you ... ?* is unusual. It is very common to ask a question with *Do you think ... + will ... ?*

Do you think	you'll get here on time? it'll rain? they'll come to the meeting?
--------------	---

Short answer

Do you think he'll come? Do you think it'll rain?	He might. It might.
--	------------------------

Use

- Might* is used to express a future possibility. It contrasts with *will*, which, in the speaker's opinion, expresses a future certainty.
England **will** win the match.
(I am sure they will.)
England **might** win the match.
(It's possible, but I don't know.)
- Notice that, in the negative, these sentences express the same idea of possibility.
It **might not** rain this afternoon.
I **don't think** it'll rain this afternoon.

Unit 13

13.1 Present Perfect Continuous

Form

has/have + been + -ing (present participle)

Positive and negative

I We You They	've (have) haven't	been working.
He She It	's (has) hasn't	

Question

How long	have	I we you they	been working?
	has	he she it	

Short answer

Have you been running?	Yes, I have./No, I haven't.
Has he been shopping?	Yes, he has./No, he hasn't.

Use

The Present Perfect Continuous is used:

- to express an activity which began in the past and continues to the present.
We've been waiting here for hours!
It's been raining for days.
- to refer to an activity with a result in the present.
I'm hot because I've been running.
I haven't got any money because I've been shopping.

Note

- Sometimes there is little or no difference in meaning between the Present Perfect Simple and Continuous.
How long have you worked here?
How long have you been working here?
- Think of the verbs that have the idea of a long time, for example, *wait, work, learn, travel, play*.
These verbs can be found in the Present Perfect Continuous.
I've been playing tennis since I was a boy.
Think of the verbs that don't have the idea of a long time, for example, *find, start, buy, die, lose, break, stop*. It is unusual to find these verbs in the Present Perfect Continuous.
I've bought a new dress.
My uncle has died.
My radio's broken.
- Verbs that express a state, for example, *like, love, know, have* for possession, are not found in the Present Perfect Continuous.
We've known each other for a few weeks.
NOT We've been knowing each other for a few weeks.
How long have you had your car?
NOT How long have you been having your car?
- The Present Perfect Simple looks at the completed action. This is why, if the sentence gives a number or a quantity, the Present Perfect Simple is used. The Continuous is not possible.
I've written three letters today.
NOT I've been writing three letters today.

Unit 14

14.1 Past Perfect

Form

had + -ed (past participle)

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed. There are many common irregular verbs. See the list on p143

Positive and negative

I He/She/It We/You/They	'd (had) hadn't	arrived before 10.00.
-------------------------------	--------------------	-----------------------

Question

Had	I he/she/it we/you/they	left?
-----	-------------------------------	-------

Short answer

Yes, he had.
No, they hadn't.

Use

The Past Perfect is used to express an action in the past which happened before another action in the past.

Action 2	Action 1
When I got home,	John had cooked a meal.

Note

Notice the use of the Past Perfect and the Past Simple in the following sentences.

- When I got home, John cooked a meal. (First I got home, then John cooked.)
When I got home, John had cooked a meal. (John cooked a meal before I got home.)

14.2 Reported statements

Form

The usual rule is that the verb form moves 'one tense back'.

Direct speech	Reported speech
Present	Past
'I admire you.'	He said he admired me.
'I'm going out now.'	Ann said she was going out.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
'We've met before.'	She said they'd met before.
Past Simple	Past Perfect
'We met in 1987.'	He said they'd met in 1987.
will	would
'I'll mend it for you.'	She said that she would mend it for me.
can	could
'I can swim.'	She said she could swim.

Note

Notice the use of *say/tell*.

Say + (that)

She said (that) they were happy together.

Tell + person (that)

He told me (that) he admired his boss.

Appendix 1

IRREGULAR VERBS

Base form	Past Simple	Past Participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Appendix 2

VERB PATTERNS

Verb + <i>-ing</i>	
like	swimming
love	
enjoy	cooking
hate	
finish	
stop	

Note

We often use the verb *go* + *-ing* for sports and activities.

I **go swimming** everyday.

I **go shopping** at the weekend.

Verb + <i>to</i> + infinitive	
choose	to go
decide	
forget	
promise	
manage	
need	
help	to work
hope	
try	
want	
would like	
would love	

Verb + <i>-ing</i> or <i>to</i> + infinitive	
begin	raining/to rain
start	

Verb + <i>sb</i> + infinitive without <i>to</i>		
let	somebody	go
make		do

Modal auxiliary verbs	
can	go
could	
shall	arrive
will	
would	

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi

Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi

New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece

Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore

South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2006

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 2006

2012 2011 2010

10 9 8 7 6

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 471566 9

Student's Book

ISBN: 978 0 19 471624 6

Student's Book Pack

Printed in China

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p22 'The burglars' friend' The Daily Mail 5 February 1996 © The Daily Mail/Solo Syndication. p42 'The kids from fame' by Carrie Fisher, *Observer Life Magazine* 13 April 1997 © The Observer. p44 You've Got a Friend Words and music by Carole King © 1971 Screen Gems-EMI Music Ltd, London WC2H 0EA. Reproduced by permission of IMP Ltd, p50 'The man who gave his money away' by Tony Burton, *Mail Weekend Magazine* 31 December 1994 © The Daily Mail Weekend Magazine/Solo Syndication, p51 'Hetty Green' from *Virtual Vermont Internet Magazine* www.virtualvermont.com Reproduced by permission of *Virtual Vermont Internet Magazine*, p73 'Future tense? No, the future will be perfect' interview with Michio Kaku, *Focus Magazine* October 1998. Reproduced by permission of Michio Kaku, p74 'One day all this will be offices' by Jonathon Glancey, *The Guardian* 11 July 1998 © The Guardian, p78 'All alone with my rocky horrors' by Paul Lay, *The Telegraph* 3 October 1998 reproduced by permission of Paul Lay, p82 'Into the wild' by Jon Krakauer, published by Macmillan Publishers Ltd, reproduced by permission of John A Ware Literary Agency, p106 'Tom, 69, skates on for Tesco' *The Daily Mail* 18 February 1999 © The Daily Mail/Solo Syndication, p107 'Life's a beach patrol' by Cordell Marks, *The Weekend Telegraph* September 9 1995 reproduced by permission of Cordell Marks, p114 'The tale of two silent brothers' from *Oxford Bookworms: Stories From The Five Towns*. Reproduced by permission of Jennifer Bassett, Every endeavour has been made to identify the sources of all material used. The publisher apologises for any omissions.

Illustrations by: Kathy Baxendale p30 (list), 108 (diary writing); CartoonStock/Larry p24; Rowie Christopher pp56, 61, 116; Martin Cottam pp114, 115; Paul Dickinson p27; Mark Duffin: p.98; Jessie Eckel, New Division p32; Andy Hammond: p.111, 113, 116; Tim Kahane p14; Leo Hartas: pp.84-5; Darren Hopes/debut Art p.24; Ian Kellas pp12, 20, 21, 28, 40, 52, 71, 85, 100; Gone Loco/Debut Art p29; Oxford University Press TechGraphics pp74, 79; Debbie Ryder p53; Harry Venning pp10, 60, 64, 69, 72, 78, 96, 104; Azélie Williams pp94, 95

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs: The Advertising Archives pp92 (Wrigley's pixie at bottom), (girl with pixies), (women in white hats); Alamy pp.34 Mark Eveleigh (carpet seller), (Ian Miles/Flashpoint Pictures/forensics); The Ancient Art & Architecture Collection pp11 (Greek theatre masks); The Art Archive pp11 (Archaeological Museum, Naples/man reading scroll), (Egyptian Museum, Cairo/Egyptian papyrus); The Anthony Blake Photo Library pp65 (fondue), (A Sydenham/Mexican food), (G Buntrock/mint tea); Bubbles Photo Library pp8 (F Rombout/family by river), 107 (J Woodcock/Cathy); Bridgeman Art Library p80 (papyrus); J Allan Cash p93 (feeding of animals, one way); Anthony Coleman p107 (Terry Cemm both); Collections pp38 (B Shuel/Justin), 93 (B Wells/keep off the grass); Colorific pp14 (T Graham/Maori), (B Backman/sheep), 49 (J Tove Johansson/cottage), 51 (C Bernson/Milton Petrie); Comstock pp63 (all); Corbis pp6 (S Maze/Bologna), 10 (R Holmes/conversation), 16 (B Krist/barbecue), 20 (D Modricker/COR/older couple), 34/ML Simbaldi (Thailand), Richard Hamilton smith (floating market); 45 (Picture Press/man at desk), (Wartenberg/Picture Press/man smiling), 47 (C Osborne/Melbourne), 51 (Bettmann/Hetty Green both), 66 (D Katzenstein), 78 (early x-ray), 80 (D Gluckstein/middle-aged man), 81 (B Varie/man in office), (F Wartenberg/couple with gift), (L Manning/girl on steps), (Bettmann/man and pipe), (C Garratt/Milepost 92/security notice), 90 (Kim Kulish/Larry Page and Sergey Brin), 90 (Norbert Schaefer/boy with red hair), 98 (Roger Ressmeyer/lava flow), 98 (Cooper Photo/Old Faithful Geyser); Corbis Sygma pp42-3 (L Greenfield), 74 (J van Hasselt/poster); Digital Vision p19 (New York), 35 (M Mutor); Getty Images pp27 (The Image Bank/Max Sonnenbaum/Oxford skyline), 34 (Rohan/Stone/Marrakesh); (Photonica/volcanic eruption); Getty One Stone pp10 (W Kaehler/monkeys), 13 (K Fisher/mother and child), (PBJ Pictures/college students), (PBJ Pictures/business people), 15 (S Jauncey/fishing), (L Adamski Peek/ice hockey), (D Madison/football), (D Balfour/giraffe), 16 (A Sacks/girls hairstyling), 19 (D Durfee/Roberto Solano), (S Cohen/Yuet Tung), 20 (B Thomas/young couple), 23 (F Alison), 38 (P Cade/Sean), (M Douet/Martyn), 39 (T Reynolds/Mel), 44 (Stone/Peter Correz), 45 (I O'Leary/jill woman), (L Monneret/girl with presents), (R E Daemrich/yawning boy), 46 (B Thomas), 47 (R La Salle/Chicago), (D Armand/Dubai), (H Pfeiffer/Paris), 49 (C Ehlers/girls fishing), 57 (H Camille/Guy and Suzie), 65 (R Elliot/Alpine restaurant), (R During/Acapulco beach), 81 (D Day/woman and spider), (D Stewart/man and knife), (C Slattery/rollercoaster), 84 (P Lee Harvey/man), 107 (D Ham/balloon), (Taxi/Robert Warren/teacher with students), 116 (Taxi/taxi/West Rock); 116 (The Image Bank/factory worker); Sally & Richard Greenhill pp13 (elderly couple talking); Robert Harding Picture Library pp19 (© Noble Stock/Int'l Stock/Endre Boros), 49 (midnight sun), 76 (N Boyd/hotel exterior), (F Jalain/swimming pool), (P Langone/Int'l Stock/conference room and bar), 93 (S Harris/train departures); Hulton Getty pp54 (Anthony Trollope), 78 (Wilhelm Roentgen, x-ray), 92 (Reiss/American soldiers), (Wrigley's pixie at top); The Image Bank pp13 (M Romanelli/men talking in café), 62 (R Mancini), 65 (G A Rossi/market stall); Images Colour Library pp82-3 (Panoramic Images); Impact Photos p93 (S Sheppard/Underground); The Kobal Collection pp104 (TM & © 1993 Universal City Studios and Amblin Entertainment. All Rights Reserved/Schindler's List), 105 (Lucasfilm/Paramount 81/Raiders of the Lost Ark), (David James 1998 TM & Dreamworks LLC Paramount Pictures Amblin Entertainment. All Rights Reserved/Saving Private Ryan), (Warner Bros/Steven Spielberg); Lonely Planet Images p34 Diana Mayfield (market stall); Magnum Photos pp74 (I Berry/Shenzen building site), 75 (Hong Kong cityscape); Oxford University Press p73 (Michio Kaku); Photofusion pp45 (M Campbell/woman in car); Photographers International p99 (T Fincher); Pictorial Press pp104 (Columbia/Close Encounters of the Third Kind), 105 (UPI/Jurassic Park); 116 Punchstock/Digital Vision/nurse); Redferns pp57 (M Hutson/concert); 91 (Reuters/Stephen Hird/Google webpage); Ringway Signs Ltd p93 (services); Science Photo Library pp10 (M Agliolo/computer screens), (D Ducros/satellite), 73 (A Pasiaka/DNA fingerprinting background), (P Plailly/boy and hologram), (J Edmaier/lava); John & Liz Soars p8 (Joy Darling); Solo Syndication Ltd p106; Frank Spooner Pictures pp50 (Jordan/Gamma), 55 (P Massey/Joanna Trollope); Still Pictures p73 (H Schwarzbach/solar panels in Sudan); The Stock Market pp38 (A Skelley/Amy), 73 (Zefa/medical scanner); Stock Shot p79 (D Willis/El Chorro Gorge); The Telegraph p78 (P Lay/Paul Lay); Telegraph Colour Library pp8 (R Gage/family portrait), 10 (J Danielsky/mobile phone), (F Delva/film), 24 (R Chapple/Zoe), (S Miller/police detective), 48 (T Chevassut/Beijing), 65 (S Adams/snowboarding), (P Scholey/Nile cruise), (K Ross/pyramids); Tesco Photo Library p93 (unleaded).

Commissioned photography by: Gareth Boden pp6, 7, 21, 25 37, 38, 58-9, 66, 69, 70, 93 (out of order, this room is ready, engaged), 94, 96-7, 101, 103, 108, 117; Haddon Davies pp12, 30; Mark Mason pp9, 26-7, 30, 36, 54-5, 73 (Visions), 90, 93 (under 18), 108; Karen Jamieson p111 (brother and sister).

Locations, styling, and props provided by: Gareth Boden pp101 (entrance hallway), 108 (living room) Boots p37 (chemist); Café Rouge, Hertford p37 (café); Censored p37 (clothes shop); Countryside Residential Properties pp7, 108 (kitchen), 117 (exterior of house & entrance hallway); Goldsmiths p101 (jewellers); Harlow College p96-7; Antonia Jack pp38, 72, 117 (kitchen & birthday); Post Office Counters p37 (post office); Mr and Mrs M Stewart, Wytham Abbey, Oxford, pp58-9 (hair by Kelly/Roland of Switzerland, make-up by Elinor Rowley tel: 07870696247); Studio Cambridge pp21, 101 (school), 117 (classroom); Thaxted Surgery p69; WAGN p117 (train station); Waitrose p101 (supermarket); Julie and Mark Winton, p111; Zooid p41.